COURSE NOTES - THEOLOGY 111

DIPLOMA IN THEOLOGY

BY

DR JOHN C McEWAN

[BOOK 1 OF 12]

JUNE 1999
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION A - BIBLIOLOGY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - God's Word</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - Inspiration</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - Inerrancy</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - Interpretation</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible Canonicity</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - Subject and Purpose</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible - God's Revelation</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION B - THEOLOGY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trinity</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character of God</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fatherhood of God</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION C - CHRISTOLOGY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deity of Christ</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incarnation of Christ</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His Ministry and Character</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His Substitutionary Death</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resurrection of Christ</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His Ascension and Ministry Now</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His Coming for His saints</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His Coming with His saints</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION D - PNEUMATOLOGY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Ministry in the Old Testament</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Transitional Ministry</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Regeneration</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Indwelling and Sealing</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Baptism</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Filling</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit - Other Ministries</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION E - AGES IN WORLD HISTORY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dispensations</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenants</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION F - ANGELOLOGY &amp; SATANOLOGY</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angels and their Role</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan - Personality and Power</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan - his Work and Destiny</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan - his Strategies</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demons - Satan's Troops</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION G - STUDY OF MAN</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Man - his Origin and Creation</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man - his Origin and Creation [continued]</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man - His Fall</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECTION A - BIBLIOLOGY – A STUDY OF THE BIBLE

LESSON 1 – PRELIMINARY REMARKS TO THEOLOGY

CHRISTIAN LIVING

We can escape present accountability to God but this is not possible in the future. Healthy doctrine and theology will result in Holy living. In 1 Peter it states that there are many things which are hard to understand. Provide a promise and problem notebook so that as you come across promises and problems you should note them down in the front and back of the notebook. The prime reason for studying theology is to conform our lives to the person of Christ. Only God can do that.

Who should understand theology? - Everybody!

Non Christians have a counterfeit theology

We should be accurate in our theology as we are studying the only true God

As Christians it is of vital importance to study theology

ACCOUNTABILITY

We are accountable:- [a] To Ourselves – Conscience, [b] To Society – Law, [c] To Family, Employers etc. [d] To God - As Creator

We may believe that we can escape accountability but the Bible tells us that we are accountable:-


We require sound doctrine - 2 Timothy 4:3, Titus ! :9

Ideally doctrine or Theology will lead to Holy Living

Paul prayed for an increase in Knowledge Phileippians 1:9-11, Colossians 1:9-10

The ultimate goal is to be conformed to the Person of Christ.

What is theology? - Theology which is the discovery, systemising and presentation of the truths about God. It is made up of two words "Theos" meaning God and "logeo" meaning study. This is therefore the mind of God.

"Prolegeo" means before we speak. There are certain things that need to be clarified before we study theology. Empiricists say that you cannot speak about God at all. The issue however is getting to know God and specifically getting to know Jesus Christ better.

We should not get side-tracked by theological disputes such as that between the viewpoint of Calvin and Arminius. We are going to know the plan of God well enough to thank God for election as well as free will. Acts 17:22-34. As we go through we will see most disputes have a solution between the extremes.

The response to Theology - Here we have Paul's encounter with the philosophers on Mars Hill where after hearing Paul speak some mocked whilst others believed. [v32-34] The response in the crowd showed who had been prepared by the Holy Spirit to accept and those who would resist the calling of God. Paul tells about the Lord and His resurrection by which time they accept or are moving away. John 16:8-11

The Holy Spirit - The Holy Spirit is the agent of conviction of sin and regeneration. Do not think that you can argue people into the kingdom of heaven. The Holy Spirit does the work, the Lord Jesus Christ gets the glory, you give the facts and get the blessing but you cannot take the credit.

In the person of the Lord Jesus Christ God has stepped into history.
Theology is the study of the person, plan, and work of the triune God, the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, the character of each. It is also a study of man as a creature of the Creator and a study of God's plan for man.

WHERE DO WE START? HOW DO WE START?

The student of theology
[a] Must believe - 1 Corinthians 2:10-16
[b] Must think - a combination of theology and exegesis
[d] Must worship and have an increasing reverence for God.

The Conservative Viewpoint - As Bible believing people we believe that God has spoken to man. We have the premise of revelation. The principle is that the Bible is God's revealed words to us and knowledge of His Word will give knowledge of God because in it He has revealed Himself.

The Liberal Viewpoint - To the liberal however the premise is that the Bible is not revelation but that the Bible is philosophy. They hold that Genesis is not history, that the Flood did not occur, they hold to evolution rather than creation. Some are not happy with the miracles and the resurrection. They however are often orthodox on salvation and get living in the Spirit right. Their premise is wrong therefore their conclusions will be wrong, and their lives will be “wrong”. They will stumble in doubts and falter with uncertainty as they face the trials of life.

Subjectivism is the hallmark of the liberal because reason has always dominated their theology. Schleiermacher [1768-1834] emphasised analysis of religious experience based on feelings whilst Kant [1724-1804] relied on conscience as the basis for truth. In all liberalism human nature in one form or another is the source of religious truth.

The Neo Orthodox - There is also a new school called the neo orthodoxy who insist that God not man should initiate revelation. The Bible they say witnesses to the Word and does so fallibly. The Bible therefore has no absolute authority.

Catholicism - Combines the authority of the Bible with tradition with the ultimate authority resting with the church itself. Tradition has become binding on the church as divine revelation.

Conservatives who make experience authoritative such as Charismatics make the same error as liberalism.

Our Premise - The premise we hold is that the Bible is the Word of God without error in the original. It is inerrant and is given by God and preserved through the centuries. Accurate theology is based on accurate exegesis. God communicates in a normal plain and literal manner.

Priority of the New Testament - While all Scripture is inspired and profitable, the New Testament has greater priority as a source of doctrine. Old Testament was preparatory and partial while New Testament theology is climatic and complete.

Proof Texts - Use of proof texts providing they are stated accurately give conservative conclusions. Texts must be quoted in their context. A text out of context becomes a “pretext” for anything.

Systematic Theology - This is the means by which we seek out the system behind Theology. We should however realise that none of us have all the truth. Beware of those who state they have all truth. Pride and arrogance was Satan's sin.

THREE FORMS OF THEOLOGY

There are three forms of theology
[a] Historical - What great theologians and church historians in the past have thought, the contributions and mistakes of the Church.
[b] Biblical Theology - which looks at the teaching of each book of the Bible.
[1] Must be presented in a systematic form.
[2] Looks at the background and circumstances of the writer.
[3] The unfolding in progressive stages - e.g. see Topic - The Lamb
[c] Systematic Theology - which tries to see the whole counsel of God in the form of topics in a systematic way.

The limitation of a theological system must coincide with the limitation of Biblical revelation.

Theology - Should Be Systematic Theology - Theology can be understood, Requires explanation and will be Bible based.
Beliefs - Everyone has a belief system:- ATHEISTS - believes there is no God, AGNOSTIC believes he cannot know about God, THEIST - Believes in God, TRINITARIAN - believes God is a Trinity. As our information about God comes from the Bible our belief in the Truthfulness of the Bible is critical. God gave information to be understood. lie communicates in a literal manner.

Liberal or Conservative - Liberal - Reason, Feelings, Conscience - Conservative - Authority of the Bible. Acceptance by faith of the Bible as literal and totally reliable is a very important further step in the Christian life.

DOCTRINES

PHILOSOPHY

1. Philosophy does not lead to wisdom. (Job 28:12-13,20-21).
2. It is a futile exercise. (Ecc 8:17; 1 Cor 3:19,20)
3. It does not produce happiness. (Ecc 1:13-18)
4. It leads to death. (Prov 14:12; 1 Cor 1:18-22)
5. We cannot find God through it. (Matt 11:25; 16:17; 1 Cor 1:20,21; 2:13)
6. Philosophy is useless in preaching (1 Cor 1:20,21; 2:1) as it will rob the gospel of its power. (1 Cor 1:17). Basic doctrines are then doubted or even denied, as is done in liberal theology.
7. Philosophy is a hindrance in coming to faith. (Act 17:32; 1 Cor 1:23; 1 Tim 6:20,21)
8. It has to be avoided. (Prov 3:5,7; 1 Cor 3:18; Col 2:8; 1 Tim 6:20,21)
9. Real wisdom is to know and worship God. (Job 28:28; Ps 11 1:10; Prov 1-7; 9:10; 14:16)
10. Philosophy creates "mental blocks" in the mind. This makes it hard for someone who has been trained in it to understand and accept Biblical truths.
11. A few examples as illustration-
   a) Evolution: Leaves no room for a Creator, that is, for God.
   b) Humanism: Denies the existence of God, human soul, life after death, heaven, hell, of absolute values in morals or otherwise.
   c) Psychiatry: Does not keep man responsible for his deeds. It denies the root of all man's problems: sin.
   d) Anthropology: Teaches evolution in human society. What is called "primitive man" or "stone age man" is, in reality, the end product of degeneration through sin.

BIBLE AND THE BELIEVER see page 8 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 2 - -- THE BIBLE AS THE WORD OF GOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
John 14:16,17 
John 16:7-15 
Hebrews 1:1-3  
1 Cor 13:8-13 | Holy Spirit Teacher 
Maturity |

GOD REVEALS HIMSELF

Bible is from the Greek Biblos meaning a book.

God has deliberately stepped into history and revealed himself to man. Christianity is different to any other religion because of this. This revelation of God reached its peak with the person of the Lord Jesus Christ as shown in John 1. Later in John 14 he states that the Holy Spirit will inform us of more things when he comes.

Much of the knowledge of God was given when Jesus Christ was on earth, this complementing and amplifying material already given in the Old Testament. We have now what revelation God wishes us to have this side of eternity. There was an unfolding of Gods Word with the unfolding of doctrine in the Old Testament, unfolding of doctrine in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and the unfolding of doctrine by the Holy Spirit through people such as Paul.

Hebrews 1:1-3

Hebrews 1:1-3 shows that the Lord Jesus Christ is at the right hand of God from where he sent the Holy Spirit to complete the canon of Scripture.

"God in sundry times and in many ways [polumeros]" indicates the progressive nature and fragmentary ways in which God's Word came into being. Under His guidance they were all brought together in diverse manners,[proutopos].
Methods - The various ways in which it was put into the canon in the Old Testament :- they cast lots, they used urim and thummim in conjunction with the High Priest's breastplate, visions, dreams, theophanies - the preincarnate person of the Lord Jesus Christ, prophets, angels and events.

However when the Lord Jesus Christ became Emmanuel the other methods faded into insignificance. Some dreams and visions occurred during the period of the Acts but no Angel of the Lord, for the Lord was that angel, although we do have resurrection appearances of the Lord.

In Hebrews 1:2 we note that in the recent days God has spoken to us through His Son. The word "by" is a poor translation of a Greek preposition which can be rendered "in" or "through". The translation of the Greek prepositions are a weakness in the K.J.V. which has been clarified in the last one hundred years.

The Bible as the Word of God. - At the end are 12 questions which should be considered for one word or a single sentence answer. The Bible claims to be the Word of God

It is the internal and external evidence which proves to the open minded person that we are dealing with God's Word. It is written over a period of nearly 2000 years yet it all ties together yet it all ties together. All the so called contradictions melt away if you look at the subject in context and the content of the Word. There may be a language problem or a problem of comprehension but no contradiction.

TWO LINES OF EVIDENCE


There is a constant claim from the Old and New Testament writers as well as the Lord Himself about the divine nature of the Bible. Psalm 19:7-11 Jesus Christ claimed that the law of God was to be fulfilled Matthew 5:17,18. See also Hebrews 1:1-2

External - The nature of the facts given in Scripture which supports its supernatural character.

[a] Continuity - Written over a period of 1500 years by over 40 authors. There is amazing continuity in the story it tells. Different backgrounds, different cultures, different characters. Creation to Eternity Future.

Progress from less complex to more complex – the Lamb. Types are used, prophecies given and fulfilled.

Guidance to the writing of the Bible given by the Holy Spirit.

[b] The extent of revelation – Like a telescope it sweeps the universe from the height of heavens to the depths of hell, like a microscope it looks into the minutest details of the plan of God, like a stereoscope it brings all items into harmony.

It presents information from eternity past to eternity future. We need not fear what archaeologists may dig up because if the Bible says something happened it did.

[c] The Influence and Publications of the Bible – it is far more widely published in more languages than any other book. It was among the first books to be printed in the West. It continues to be printed in ever increasing numbers.

It is classified as the sword of the spirit Eph 6:17, it also has other features in John 17:17, 2 Cor 3:17,18, Eph 5:25-26

[d] Subject matter of the Bible – the supernatural character of the Bible is seen in the treating of unknown and otherwise unknowable matters in exactly the same was as that which is known. In all subjects presented its statements is final accurate and timeless. Its contents allow the reader to be wise in the truth both in time and eternity.

[e] The Bible as literature – considered from this viewpoint the Bible is supreme from history to poetry, stories of love and war, speculations of philosophy versus the truth.

[f] Unprejudiced Authority – the human authors have not prejudiced the Bible in favour of man as it deals with his sin and weaknesses. Some of the authors themselves such as Solomon in Ecclesiastes show themselves as frail.

It reveals with authority things from heaven, things seen and unseen revealing facts about God, man angels, time and eternity, life and death, sin and salvation, heaven and hell.

Supreme Character – it is a supernatural book revealing the person and glory of God as shown in His Son Jesus Christ could not have been an invention of mortal man as His perfect character could not have been comprehended by those on earth without Divine assistance.

We therefore see the relation between the written word and the Lord Jesus Christ as the living Word.
They both are supernatural and they transform the lives of those who believe. The revelations are understandable by the child and are as complex as the divine wisdom and knowledge and as enduring as the God whom they reveal.

THE SCOPE OF THE BIBLE

God's hand is clearly in it as you do not get so many people writing 66 books over such a length of time with complete compatibility without Divine inspiration. The Bible looks at everything. No other book has been published so widely or has come under such great scrutiny. This subject matter has a supernatural stamp on it. It is the greatest literature in the world. It is completely authoritative. It has supreme power, beauty and uniqueness of God's Word.

1 Corinthians 13:8 –10. In verse 8 we see the words of knowledge as a means of obtaining God's Word before it was completed with the Book of the Revelation in 96AD

Whilst God's revelation is complete now for this side of eternity since the book of Revelation was completed by the Apostle John God is still speaking to His people through His Word through means such as divine guidance. Anyone who says that they are guided by the Lord today however must be guided in accordance with the written Word. We have a closed canon of Scripture and have not had any further new inspired revelation since the closing of the Book of the Revelation.

Revelation and guidance are completely different as are the ways in which the Old Testament saints were guided by means of dreams and visions before the completion of the canon. Many of the problems in the extremes of the Charismatic movement are caused by an open ended Bible to which experiences and prophecies can be added. This leads them into error.

If you want to hear voices you should go without food and sleep for 72 hours. You will have a mystical experience without any spiritual content. Pentecostals do it and it means nothing as any unbeliever can do it. Medical practitioners have unbelievers especially alcoholics who see things or hear things due to their condition but do not have the religious imagery.

There is therefore a difference between revelation which is the basis of God's Word and guidance by God which always has to be judged against the Word of God. At the time Paul was writing 1 Corinthians in 55 AD there were dramatic gifts that would draw attention to the legitimacy of the written Word. They were also there to aid evangelism and to get the church started very quickly. These temporary gifts included miracles, prophecy, knowledge and the true gift of tongues. The gift of tongues was also a sign to the nation Israel that their time as custodians of the Word of God was coming to an end and that the Church was now taking over.

The temporary signs were to indicate that something dramatically new was happening. There are permanent gifts as well such as administration, helps, pastor-teacher.

That the temporary gifts were going to cease is indicated in verse 8. The gift of tongues would cease [tousonta] is in the future middle indicative. This would mean to cause to cease or rest or to cease to function. Future tense indicates that in 55 AD this ceasing would be in the future, The Greek word used does not mean that the function was bad but that the job for which it had been created had now been completed. The indicative mood shows the reality of it ceasing.

The other two gifts mentioned in verse 8 those of prophecy and knowledge are said to fail [katergeo]. These are in the future passive indicative. The passive voice shows that it will be rendered inoperative, it will receive ceasing. No one will need to have the gift of prophecy or knowledge as all the information which God wants revealed will be in the completed written canon of Scripture.

This does not mean that God cannot give a word of knowledge or prophecy, but that it will not add to Scripture, rather it is to be tested by it.

verse 9 gives us the completed canon of Scripture which is replacing these dramatic gifts. We do not go out to seek a prophet as we already have the whole counsel of God. We now seek a pastor teacher who now evaluates from the Bible.

For we know in part and prophecy in part which was the case in 55 AD. There are three sections involved here. What the situation was in 55 AD, what it was when the canon was completed in 96 AD and what it will be like in eternity. Often you will find that with a prophecy there will be an initial fulfilment with a future complete fulfilment yet to come and is not unlike this concept.

verse 10 "When that which is perfect is come" - perfect is in the neuter and deals with a thing rather than a person, in this case being the completed canon of Scripture. There is strong argument that the Biblical gift of tongues ceased in 70 AD with the fall of Jerusalem as it was a sign to the Jews regarding their discipline.[Isaiah 28]

Speaking in tongues is not restricted to Christians with Christian and non Christian psychologists, anthropologists and historians reporting many unbelievers doing the same. We are going to have a tremendous revelation when we see the Lord Jesus Christ face to face. This is the next thing for the church.
DOCTRINES

THE LAMB – see page 44 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

HOLY SPIRIT: TEACHER - see page 40 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

MATURE

CATEGORIES OF BELIEVERS

1. Standpoint of Spirituality
   a) Spiritual believer - the Holy Spirit controls the inside of the believer (Rom 8:6b).
   b) Carnal believer - the sinful nature controls the inside of the believer (Rom 8:6a).

2. Standpoint of Growth
   a) Baby - one who has just received Christ as Saviour.
   b) Adolescent - one who has learned some doctrine but is not yet in the application state.
   c) Mature - one who knows and applies doctrine and spends a maximum amount of time in the filling of the Holy Spirit.

3. Relationship of Maturity and Spirituality
   a) Spirituality is an absolute. The Holy Spirit either controls or He does not. One cannot be a little bit carnal. If he is carnal he is NOT spiritual.
   b) Maturity is speeded up by spirituality, but a baby believer can be either carnal or spiritual, and a mature believer can be carnal or spiritual.

MATURITY: CROSS TO THE CROWN

1. Salvation is only the beginning of the plan for man. After salvation the believer's objective is to advance in stages of spiritual growth on the path from the Cross to the Crown.
2. At each stage the believer faces increasing intense tests that can only be passed by faith. Paul in Romans 1:17 says believers progress from faith to faith. The five Hebrew words for faith illustrate the five stages of growth described in the New Testament.

   a) The Babe - 1 Peter 2:2 - AMEN - the leaning faith of Genesis 15:6
   All believers enter the family of God as infants when they exercise faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. After the tremendous stress of birth, of coming from darkness into the light the infant's impulse is to nurse. The objective is nourishment but the baby also receives great comfort in feeding. God's objective for the spiritual infant is for growth, but He commences this with comfort. Not much is expected of a baby in his first few years, he cannot feed or change himself. Spiritual infants are just as helpless and need a great deal of nurturing, encouragement and patient encouragement and patient instruction.

   b) The Adolescent - 1 John 2:13-14 - BATACH - the wrestling faith of Psalm 37:3
   Adolescents young, strong and eager believers. This is the stage where people have grown to the point at which they understand some of the principles of truth and are beginning to apply them to their lives. But like most adolescents, they have the growing pains of arrogance and rebellion against authority; they are sometimes too eager to act on their own, and this often gets them into trouble. They have knowledge which they mistake for wisdom, but they lack the experience. Their tendency is to want to apply the truth to other people's lives. Adolescents may be troublesome, but at least they are not apathetic. They must be patiently trained and encouraged to channel their energies. No one makes it to maturity without passing through adolescence.

   c) The Mature - Hebrews 5:14, 6:1 - CHASAH - the confident faith that takes refuge in the Lord - Psalm 57:1
   The mature believer is able to take meat, the advance doctrine of the Word. A believer who has arrived at spiritual maturity knows enough about the Bible to take responsibility for his own life. He knows how to apply the Word of God to himself so rather than airing all his problems he knows how to solve them. He is not ready to take on every one else's problems but he can take control of his own life. He understands that God has a plan for his life and sets about fulfilling that plan. He gives himself to training and discipline, exercising himself and building spiritual muscle.

   d) The Hero of Faith - Isaiah 53:12, Hebrews 11 - YACHAL - the healing faith of Job 13:15
   Heroes of faith are men and women who have gone beyond maturity and have learned to fight the good fight. They have advanced beyond simply taking responsibility for their own lives to becoming responsible for the lives of other people. They are always willing to pick up fallen comrades, to treat their wounds, to encourage them and supply their needs. Heroes of the faith still make mistakes, they still fail but they always stand back up and go back into battle.

   The highest of all possible achievements in life is to become a friend of God. Every believer has the potential and the assets necessary to reach this point, but very few Christians do. It takes persistency and tenacity. The only people who make it this far are those who absolutely refuse to quit.

LESSON 3 – INSPIRATION
THE BIBLE AND INSPIRATION

The concept of Inspiration is not something that theologians have forced on the Bible, it is the teaching of the Bible itself. The Bible testifies to its inspiration and while this may not be conclusive it should be listened to.

The Problem of Inspiration - About 100 years ago it was sufficient for a person to say that the Bible was the inspired Word of God to man. However with the attack of the liberals and the Higher Criticism group it has become very important for each of us to be very specific with their definition of inspiration.

Many liberals will say that they believe the Word of God is inspired but then define it such a manner as to indicate that they do not believe in many of the things which Bible believing Christians do.

It is therefore of critical importance that you study at a place where the people believe that the Bible is the Word of God and have a conservative view of things. This is where the liberals make their first attack so that we need to have our defences up.

USE OF SCRIPTURE IN THE BIBLE

The New Testament uses the word Scripture 51 times and always refers to part of the Bible

[c] NT passage 1 Timothy 5:18
[d] NT larger portion 2 Peter 3:16

1 Timothy 5:18 combines both OT and NT regarding them both as Scripture. OT quotation Deuteronomy 25:4, NT quotation Luke 10:7 with the sentiment found in Leviticus 19:13 and Deuteronomy24:15

THE SCRIPTURE IS GOD BREATHED

In 2 Timothy 3:16 the Word of God is said to be God breathed [theopneustos]. Theo – God, Pneustos - Breathed Note that all Scripture, not part of Scripture is God breathed.

The form here is in the passive which means that the Bible was received from God. The English word inspire carries the concept of breathing into something however God breathed out Scripture and human authors wrote the text.

The Bible is not a museum piece but is to be used for application to the life as shown in this verse.

From Genesis to Revelation the Bible is inspired by God and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction and for instruction in righteousness.

Doctrine didaskalia that which is taught – Bible Topic Books
Reproof elegmos conviction, rebuke
Correction epanorthosis a restoration to an upright state – epi – to, ana – up, orthosis - upright which refers to an improvement of character.
Instruction paideia training, instruction in righteousness. School slave

Does this do this to you?

WHO IS THE AUTHOR OF THE BIBLE? - THE HOLY SPIRIT
2 Peter 1:21 uses the word "phero" where it states that the writers of Scripture were “moved” or carried along by the wind. This was used for a ship in Acts 27:17. [Acts 27:14-20]

As they were moved along the prophets were guided in what they wrote by the Holy Spirit as the winds in their sails. Men spoke but they wrote what God wanted them to do. It was therefore God's words through men. This shows that God used men and gave us a completely truthful Bible.

The sailors in the boat in Acts let the boat go along but were still active. In a similar way the Holy Spirit as author of the Scripture uses the active participation of the human authors to write the Scripture.

The boat and passenger analogy can also be used to show that while the passengers on the boat have some freedom it is the boat which is going to bring them to their destination.

This passage shows that no prophecy ever came from man which therefore asserts that the source was God.

In summary this verse states that God used men and gave us a completely truthful Bible.

Inspiration Came in Words

1 Corinthians 2:13 shows that God's revelation came to man in words. This counters the claim that inspiration only relates to the thoughts of God and shows it is the literal words in the original that are inspired.

It could be construed that the writers of Scripture had thoughts from God which was interpreted erroneously by man but Paul says that it is the words themselves that were given.

This therefore teaches that the actual words of the Bible are inspired.

THE DATA FROM WHICH THE BIBLE WAS PROVIDED.

[a] Material that came directly from God – Deuteronomy 9:10 Jonah 1:1

[b] Researched material – Luke 1:1-4. Here Luke consulted eyewitnesses, he used available written accounts, he carefully sifted through all the sources, he planned the orderly arrangement of the material and then the Holy Spirit bore him along so that the writing was accurate and truthful.

[c] Prophetic Material – which comprises 25% of the Bible had to be 100% true and no human writer could devise that.

[d] Historical material – many wrote what they lived through. Luke in Acts 16:10-13, Joshua with the conquest of Canaan. Some things like creation had to be revealed by God to Moses as He was the only eyewitness.

[e] Other involve the true quoting of the lies of Satan or the thoughts of unsaved of carnal people. Titus 1:12, or vividly personal and emotional Romans 9:1-3

Summary – this shows that God sometimes revealed things supernaturally and directly, sometimes he allowed the human writer to compose the message using their freedom of expression but He breathed out the total product carrying along the authors in various ways to give us His message in the words of the Bible.

DEFINITION OF INSPIRATION

Definition – God superintended the human authors of the Bible so that they composed and recorded without error His message to mankind in the words of the original writings.

[a] Superintend allows for a variety of relationship between God and the writers, sometimes direct, sometimes less so.

[b] Composed show that the writers were not passive secretaries to who God dictated the material but active writers.

[c] Without error reflects the Bible’s own claim to be the truth – John 17:17

[d] Inspiration is only in the original writings not to copies and translation however accurate they may be.

God breathed it, man wrote it, we possess it

Different forms of viewpoints about Inspiration

Many liberals are not believers at all. They take the truth and twist it subtly so that the believer thinks they are talking to a Christian.
Most of the people coming out of the Bible colleges do not believe that the Bible is the Word of God as we do.

[a] Natural Inspiration - Some say that the Bible was written by geniuses, yet in Scripture, yet we see ordinary men made great by the work of God on and through them.

[b] Dynamic or Mystical Inspiration - Other say that in addition to them being geniuses they were supernaturally inspired in an almost mystical way.

This allows the same sort or level of inspiration to other great works of literature. The question then needs to be asked that if this is true why cannot people write similar books today. This means that it is not infallible.

[c] Degree or Partial Inspiration - are those who hold to degree inspiration state that certain parts of the Bible are more inspired than other parts.

[d] Concept Inspiration - this is the belief that the concepts in the Bible are inspired but the words are not.

This is a false concept as it is necessary for the concepts to be inspired that the words need to be as well.

[e] Barthian Inspiration - has come from the German theologian Karl Barth [1886 - 1968]. His concept has taken over most of the Baptist colleges. He states that the Bible becomes the Word of God when the Word of God [Christ] talks to us through its pages. Basically he says the Bible is inspired when you feel it is inspired. When Christ is seen in the Bible that is inspired, when He is not the passage is not.

THE LORD’S VIEW OF INSPIRATION

In Matthew 5:18 the Lord said that not the smallest amendment, letter or part of a letter will pass from the law until all is fulfilled. Christ was talking about fulfilling the Torah and referring to the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ. What Jesus is saying is that in the original language not the smallest detail is other than inspired.

This is a clear indication of its verbal, absolute, unlimited inspiration.

The Lord Jesus Christ is saying that as Moses wrote those books every letter to the smallest detail was inspired. In addition everything that is in it shall be fulfilled. This only applies to the original languages and cannot be applied to a translation.

1 Timothy 5:18 shows that right at the beginning of the New Testament the attitude to Luke as an author was that Luke’s work was Scripture as he is quoting from Deuteronomy 25:4 and Luke 10:7.

In 2 Peter 3:15-16 all the epistles according to Paul are in accordance with other Scriptures. The New Testament therefore claims to have the same inspiration as the Old Testament.

The entire Bible is true even to the extent that lies are accurately recorded. Genesis 3:4

The Bible can also record the thoughts and reasoning of men out of fellowship such as Solomon in Ecclesiastes and Job's friends in much of Job.

Solomon also in Song of Solomon also gives a lot of good advice about the danger of infidelity. It is a great picture of the joy that Solomon lost. God is recording what you will be like if you reject God's doctrine.

At the time of writing Solomon is in fellowship but he is looking back at his experiences whilst out of fellowship.

It is also of great importance to look at the Bible in its historical context. For instance when Isaiah is writing to the people in his vicinity he does not need to explain the historical context but we have to study to find out who these people are.

Every verse is important and therefore the Bible should be taught verse by verse. All verses are put in the Scripture because God wanted it put there.

As you mature you will see different things in the Scriptures and whist you may be teaching the same passage of Scripture you will be getting something new and different out of the passage as you mature.

DOCTRINES

KNOWLEDGE OF GOD’S WORD

1. There is a big difference between knowing about something and truly knowing something so that your life is changed by it. The Greek uses two words: gnosis which was simply knowing about, and epignosis which was knowing the facts to the point where your life was transformed by them.
2. Our understanding of the Bible doesn’t depend upon our own intellect - it depends on the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit John 14:16-20, 15:26, 16:7-15 and on our willingness to let the Holy Spirit use His word to change us 1 Corinthians 1:19-2:16.

3. Paul’s prayers for the churches were that the believers would grow in full knowledge and the application of the word that would bring the fruits of the Holy Spirit in the life. Colossians 1:9-11, Philippians 1:9-11.

4. God has provided everything for the believer so that we might grow in the fullness of the stature of Christ. As we use it we grow and enjoy the life that God intended for us. James 4:6, Ephesians 4:12, 16, 5:16, 18, 6:10, Colossians 4:5,

5. Synonyms for spiritual growth are; putting on the whole armour of God Ephesians 6:11-13, following the pastor Hebrews 12:1, 2, Philippians 3:13-17, godliness 1 Timothy 6:3-6, 2 Peter 1:3

BIBLE: INSPIRATION – see page 8 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 4 – INERRANCY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Matthew 5:1-18  
John 10:31-38  
Matthew 22:23-33  
Matthew 22:41-46 | Inerrancy |

IMPORTANCE OF INERRANCY

Inerrancy is very important today seeing that the Bible is completely trustworthy and without error in the original. A church will only be strong if it has a strong stand on inerrancy.

Can one be an evangelical and not accept the doctrine of inerrancy? Yes.

Can one be a Biblicist and not accept the doctrine of inerrancy? No, because the Bible itself states that it is inerrant.

If you believe there is error in the Bible how do you know that the Bible is accurate when it talks about the Lord Jesus Christ or the resurrection.

Some of the things you doubt if you do not take an inerrant view is the fact of Adam, the reality of the fall, your attitude to sin, Jonah as a prophet, Noah and his ark, deny that Moses wrote the first five books of the Bible, that there are more than a single author to Isaiah. It is therefore critical as to what your attitude to God's Word is.

With the down playing of the Pentateuch there are likely to be the down playing of five lifestyle errors, adultery, homosexuality, divorce and remarriage, civil disobedience. Many mainline denominations will not take a stand on this because they are afraid of losing members. As a result they tend to go liberal and eventually have nothing to preach.

If we cannot explain things we should realise we have not got all the facts. The Bible however does teach that it is without error.

LIMIT OF INERRANCY

We limit inerrancy to the original manuscripts. All translations from the original document depends on the skill of the translators as well as their background. God's hand however has protected the Scriptures over the years. There is no doctrinal error within the textural differences we have within the presently discovered old manuscripts.

Have people worried about this before? - Yes, Augustine in the early Church stated that the greatest catastrophe would occur if we believe anything false is found in the sacred books. Thomas Aquinas - nothing false can underlie the literal sense of Scripture. Luther - the Scriptures have never erred. Wesley, if there be any error in the Bible it did not come from the God of truth.

In the last five decades or so it has become a major problem. Big issues are fought at different time in Church History over different doctrines. For the first four centuries Satan's attack was on the person of Christ, during the late Middle Ages the doctrine of justification by faith was rediscovered, in the last fifty years the Bible and inerrancy.

THREE POSSIBLE VIEWS

[a] The Bible is infallible but not inerrant. There are historic and scientific errors in the Bible but it is suitable for faith and practice. This is the view of most of the major denominations.
[b] The Lausanne Covenant declares it to be inerrant in all that it affirms. This is a covenant of evangelicals which implies that it may not be true on what it does not affirm.

[c] The International Council on Biblical Inerrancy states that Scripture is without error or fault in all its teachings and in everything that God's word has said. We would subscribe to this teaching.

GOD’S PRESERVATION OF THE BIBLE

In everything that God's Word has said it is God's Word. God has said it, God has preserved it so though we haven't got the original manuscripts we know by God's wonderful preservation that we have got it accurately, trustworthy and reliable. He has inspired it, He has preserved it, it is without error. We have God speaking through man and speaking without error. God and man worked in such a way from an inspirational viewpoint that it is without error.

Everyone wrestles with the relationship between the Divine and human authors of the Word of God. The Divine must not be so overemphasised as to obliterate the human nor must allowed to be so human as to allow errors. The authorship of the Scriptures requires balance. People today hold both extremes, we need to hold to the middle balanced view.

In the first century involved the doctrine of Docetism which claimed that the Lord was not really flesh but just a spirit. Also there was another group the Ebioinites who stated that he was only a man and not God. He however was both fully man and fully God in one person forever - the hypostatic union.

CONCLUSION

1. Here we have a book in our hand. It is God's Word through the agency of men but it is written in such a way and comes to us inerrant.

2. In the same way the Lord Jesus Christ is trustworthy as a man, as our Saviour and Lord.

3. The Bible is God's Word through man without error resulting in a sinless product.

INERRANCY AND JESUS CHRIST.

The evidence from Scripture itself. In Matthew 4 during His temptation in the wilderness by Satan the Lord Jesus Christ quoted the authority of Scripture. Satan had questioned the Word of God right from the beginning as shown in Genesis 2 where he intimated that God was being unfair not allowing man to eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Satan perverts Scripture and his main attack is against Scripture. [Matthew 4:4 cf Deuteronomy 8:3, Matthew 4:10 cf Psalm 91:11,12, Matthew 4:4, 7, 10]

Jesus Christ stated and quoted about many of the Old Testament characters as real historical people and that their exploits were factual as well. These characters included such people as Moses, Jonah, Jacob as well as places as Sodom and Gomorrah.

By not accepting the Word of God as literal the liberals are saying that God is wrong and are implying that they know more than our Lord. If they say He was confused about Moses , Jonah and Isaiah they could also say the same about His claim to be God. John 10 31-38

The Word of God is minutely inspired and authoritatively inspired, you can depend on it. The Lord's attitude to the Scriptures is absolute. Matthew 22:41-46

The Promise of Innerancy – Matthew 5:17-18, John 5:18, cf 10:34

John 10:31-38

V 24 – Jesus claims to be God. One is in the neuter, one in unity with God.

V 34 refers to an obscure Psalm 82:6 concentrating on the word gods.

V 35 it is authoritatively inspired. If 1st class. These people are about to stone him.

Matthew 22:23-33

Saducees did not believe in resurrection but asked a question on it.

Jesus says they are ignorant v 29 and the question is ridiculous v 30, Exodus 3:6.

V 32 cf John 10:34. From this the Lord assumed the truth of God's appearance to Moses, that every word could be trusted and the doctrinal truth involved was sound. The Bible cannot be inaccurate.
SOME APPARENT PROBLEMS

The errantists, those who believe there are errors and the inerrantists who believe there are no errors clash over a number of areas. One is looking for errors, the other is confident that there are no errors.

There are locations with apparent discrepancies, conflicting numbers, differences in parallel and allegedly unscientific statements.

The Word of God is God breathed [inspired]. We would expect it to be totally accurate. We would expect it to be preserved inerrantly.

The inerrantist assumes that we have not got all the evidence before us. An example was the critics of the Bible said there was no such thing as a Hittite Empire. A few years ago archaeologists in the Middle East excavated an area showing that there was a Hittite Empire. The history books had to be revised.

SOME EXAMPLES

[1] Old Testament

[a] The two accounts of Creation - Genesis 1:11-12 cf Genesis 2:5

[b] Who was Cain’s wife - The fact of Adam and Eve - Matthew 19:39, Luke 3:38, Jude 14 - They had many children – Genesis 5:4 - They came from the hand of God without mutant genes - The first marriages were between brothers and sisters and were safe at that point.

[c] Laver in 2 Chronicles 4:2 – 5 - Did the Holy Spirit know the value of pi. One cubit is 18 inches Circumference = 30 cubits or 540 inches, Diameter 10 cubits = 180 inches - Formula shows that circumference would be 565 inches - 2 Chronicles 4:5 – hands breadth = 4 inches, inside diameter 180-8 = 172 inches - Revised circumference 540 inches.


[b] The number of people killed - Numbers 25:9 [24,000] cf 1 Corinthians 10:8 [23,000]


[a] To take a staff or not – Matthew 10:9-10 [ktaomai], Mark 6:8, Luke 9:3 [airo]

[b] Zechariah or Jeremiah Matthew 27:9,10 cf Zechariah 11:12-13


By close examination these apparent anomalies can be seen not to be anomalies

DOCTRINES

BIBLE: INERRANCY – see page 8 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 5 - INTERPRETATION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Bible – Interpretation [40]</td>
<td>2 Timothy 2:14-19, Galatians 1:6-9, 2 Timothy 1:10-11</td>
<td>Proph – Fulfilled Prophecy Interpretation Consecration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTRODUCTION
In 2 Timothy 3:16 - Four things that Paul emphasises are [a] Study, unremitting study; [b] Prove or unapproved, [c] You become a worker with a tool of trade in the form of God's Word; [d] Rightly dividing the Word of truth.

Rightly dividing is a present active participle of the word "orthotomeo" which means to plough a straight furrow or to cut a straight line.

The study of the principles of interpretation is called hermeneutics while analysis of a passage is called exegesis.

Interpretation must cut a straight line, an accurate consistent interpretation of the text. It is like the farmer who ploughs the field all the same way to the same depth and the same basic line. You need to be consistent and persistent. Our attitude towards inspiration, revelation and inerrancy is vital in our attitude towards interpretation. We are not to be careless, flippant or casual with our interpretation.

Preaching is accurately undertaking interpretation of the Word and teaching it, Galatians 1:6-9. You can be cursed if you handle the Word of God lightly and erroneously. You are in danger of divine discipline if you share your ignorance with others.

WHAT WE MUST DO

[a] Walk consistently in the Spirit and in prayer.
[b] Consistent hard study of the Word is called for the pastor-teacher or teacher.
[c] Thirdly prayerfully prepare your study.
[d] Finally you should teach it with authority.

INTERPRETATION

There are four methods of interpretation – [a] Literal, [b] Allegorical [c] Semi Allegorical [d] Theological

[a] Literal - The Bible is to be taken, using the normal rules of grammar, literally. Where the Scripture is obviously an allegory it should be taken in that form e.g. John 10:7-10. Where it is not it should be taken as a true story. Luke 16:19-31] Some are recorded as lies, some as pictures, some as parables and some as normal narrative. We have a literal interpretation. This type of interpretation will among other things cause the person to believe in a literal Millennium and distinguish between Israel and the Church.

Principle

"When common sense makes plain sense take no other sense". Usually this form of interpretation goes hand in hand with acceptance of a verbally inspired Bible.

[b] Allegorical - This method which uses symbols makes Scripture say something other than its obvious meaning. Once you start to allegorize you should ask why? Perhaps it is because you do not wish to take it literally. Many within the Roman Catholic Church ascribe to this method. Many of the denominations such as the whole Reformed Movement, Anglicans, some Baptists and Methodists follow this format. They make spiritual word pictures from the text rather than a literal interpretation.

This method came to a peak with Origen in Egypt during the 3rd century who used a combination of Greek and Jewish philosophy including the works of Plato.

If used consistently this type of interpretation would reduce the Bible to near fiction for the normal meaning of the words would be replaced by whatever meaning the interpreter gives to the symbols.

[c] Semi literal. - this is, as is the case of Allegorical approach, an inconsistent approach where the interpretation is often coloured by preconceived ideas and concepts.

Very few evangelicals use the full allegorical method. Evangelicals who use the semi literal method usually treat prophecy by allegory and the rest of the Bible literally. This tends towards amillennialism.

[d] Theological – This method is allied to the semi allegorical method and is controlled by the Theological framework applied by the interpreter.

REASONS FOR SUPPORT OF THE LITERAL METHOD

[a] The purpose of language. God is the author of language as it is the means of communication. If the Bible does not communicate there is something wrong with the author but as the author is God the Holy Spirit there is nothing wrong with the Scriptures. The Scriptures are therefore literal and objective.

[b] Objectivity – switching from literal to other forms of interpretation will give different messages from the Bible.

PRINCIPLES OF INTERPRETATION

[a] Grammatical – study the grammar.

[b] Context – Study the context.

[c] Scripture with Scripture - Compare with other areas of the Bible.

[d] Progressive Revelation – God may add to or change. – The Lamb, Pork – 1 Timothy 4:3


Summary - It is God who desired to give man His Word, it was God who gave the language so that we could understand and communicate. He gave the Bible to communicate to us and not confuse us. He gave us the communication plainly as this is the way that people communicate.

God is behind man's thinking and is not going to write His book of revelation and inspiration in such a way that the very rules of language that He is behind is going to be broken.

SEVEN PRINCIPLES OF BIBLE INTERPRETATION.

[a] Consider the Bible as a whole, it is God's unfolding drama of redemption. Your interpretation should be on the basis of God's Word having a redemptive theme.

[b] Consider each book distinctively. You need to understand the different characteristics of each book.

[c] Consider to whom the book or the passage was written.

[d] Consider the bigger context, the historical and geographical context.

[e] Consider other biblical passages with the same subject. Because the Bible is God's Word He has got it right and got it all together. Consider like with like and if the different passages tie together with the same interpretation you probably have got it right.

[f] Discover the exact meanings of the original words used. Textual variations do not affect one doctrine.

[g] Beware of personal prejudice, do not read your own preconceptions into any passages, let the Holy Spirit correct your theology as you study.

DOCTRINES

PROPHECY: FULFILLED PROPHECY PROOF OF INSPIRATION

All scripture is inspired by God (2 Peter 1:19-21). Therefore, all Biblical prophecies must come true. This is demonstrated in prophecies already fulfilled.

1. Reuben would be unstable and lose his rights as firstborn. Prophecy (Genesis 49:3-4) - Fulfillment (Numbers 26:5-11)
2. Simeon would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfillment (Joshua 19:1-9)
3. Levi would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfillment (Joshua 21:4-7)
4. Judah would become the ruler over the nation of Israel. Prophecy (Genesis 49:8-12) - Fulfillment (Numbers 10:14, Joshua 15:1 Revelation 5:5)
5. Zebulun would receive an allotment of land on the coast and it would reach down to Sidon. Prophecy (Genesis 49:13) - Fulfillment (Joshua 19:10-16) as well as history when they took the land to the south of their area previously allocated to Asher and their influence reached right down to Sidon.
6. Issachar would be given a fertile area between two mountains and would be a servant. Prophecy (Genesis 49:14-15) - Fulfillment (Joshua 19:17-22)
7. Dan would be a full member of Israel but would lead the nation away in idolatry. Prophecy (Genesis 49:16-18) - Fulfillment (Joshua 19:40-48) and the fact that idolatry in the nation was led by this tribe. It is also of interest that his tribe is not mentioned as having any part in the 144,000 witnesses in (Revelation 7).
8. Gad would be a warrior tribe. Prophecy (Genesis 49:19) - Fulfillment (1 Chronicles 5:18-20, 12:8)
9. Asher would have a rich and fertile land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:20, Deuteronomy 33:24-26) - Fulfillment - History - Asher enjoyed a rich and fertile area together in more recent times successful oil exploration.
10. Naphtali would be quick to spread good news Prophecy (Genesis 49:21) - Fulfillment (Matthew 4:13-15) as Jesus began his ministry in Naphtali and most of the disciples who gave the good news came from that region.
11. Joseph would receive great blessing. Prophecy (Genesis 49:22-26) - Fulfillment (Deut 33:13-17)
12. Benjamin would be a ferocious group Prophecy. (Genesis 49:27) - Fulfillment (Judges 19, 20:21-47)
13. Joshua and Caleb to enter into the Promised Land after 40 years wandering. Prophecy (Numbers 14:24, 30) - Fulfillment (Joshua 3:7, 14:6-12)
14. Sisera would be defeated by a woman. Prophecy (Judges 4:9) - Fulfillment (Judges 4:21)
15. Hophi and Phineas would die on the same day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:34) - Fulfillment (1 Samuel 4:11)
16. The priesthood would be removed from the family of Eli. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:27-36, 3:1-14) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 2:26-27)
17. Saul to be the first king of Israel and would save the nation from the Philistines. Prophecy (1 Samuel 9:15-16) - Fulfillment (1 Samuel 11:14)
19. Saul to die in battle on a certain day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 28:19) - Fulfillment (1 Samuel 31:1-6)
20. Solomon to build the Temple not David. Prophecy (1 Chronicles 17:1-12) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 7:51)
21. The sword not to depart from David's house because of sin. Prophecy (2 Samuel 12:10-12) - Fulfillment (2 Samuel 13:28-29, 16:21-22)
22. The bones of Jeroboam's pagan priests to be burnt upon the false altar that Jeroboam had constructed. Prophecy (1 Kings 13:1-3) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 23:4-6)
23. Jeroboam's dynasty to be destroyed. Prophecy (1 Kings 14:10-11) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 15:27-28)
24. Ahab to be victorious over the Syrians. Prophecy (1 Kings 20:28) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 20:29-30)
25. Ahab to die in battle for killing Naboth. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19, 22:17) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 22:37)
26. The dogs would then lick his blood from his chariot. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19) - Fulfillment (1 Kings 22:38)
27. Jezebel to be eaten by wild dogs. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:23, 2 Kings 9:10) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 9:30-37)
28. Elisha to receive a double portion of Elijah's spirit. Prophecy (2 Kings 2:9) - Fulfillment demonstrated by the fact that the Bible records that Elisha performed twice as many miracles as Elijah.
29. Naaman to recover from his leprosy. Prophecy (2 Kings 5:3,8,10) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 5:14)
30. The starving inhabitants of Samaria to receive an abundance of food in twenty four hours. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:1) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 7:16-17)
31. An arrogant aide to the king to see the miracle but not to eat of the food. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:2,19) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 7:17,20)
32. Beb-Hadad, a Syrian king to recover from his sickness, but die anyway. Prophecy (2 Kings 8:10) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 8:15)
33. Jehu to have four generations on the throne of northern kingdom. Prophecy (2 Kings 10:30) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 15:12)
34. Jehu's dynasty to then be destroyed. Prophecy (Hosea 1:4) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 15:8-12)
36. Jehoram to suffer with a disease because of sin. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 21:15) - Fulfillment (2 Chronicles 21:18-19)
37. Amaziah to die because of his idolatry. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 25:15) - Fulfillment (2 Chronicles 25:20-27)
38. Sennacherib to be assassinated in his own land. Prophecy (Isaiah 37:7) - Fulfillment (Isaiah 37:37-38)
39. Sennacherib's attempt to invade Jerusalem not to be successful. Prophecy (Isaiah 37:37-33-35) - Fulfillment (Isaiah 37:36-37)
40. Hezekiah to be healed of a terminal disease. Prophecy (Isaiah 38:5) - Fulfillment (Isaiah 38:9)
41. Cyrus to allow the Jews to go back to Jerusalem. Prophecy (Isaiah 44:28) - Fulfillment (Ezra 1:1-2)
42. Zedekiah to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 21:7) - Fulfillment (Jeremiah 52:8-11)
43. Jehoiachin to die in Egyptian captivity and not return to Judah. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:10-12) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 23:33-34)
44. Jehoiachin to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:25) - Fulfillment (2 Kings 24:15)
45. Jehoiachin was told that no seed of his would sit on the throne of David. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:28-30) - Fulfillment - historical. This prophecy is in apparent contradiction to the Davidic Covenant of (2 Samuel 7:8-16) where David was promised a "son" who would reign forever on his throne. This apparent contradiction is solved by the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus Christ as Mary was descended from David via Nathan. (Luke 3:23-31)
46. Hananiah, a false prophet to die within a year. Prophecy (Jeremiah 28:15-16) - Fulfillment (Jeremiah 28:17)
47. Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt. Prophecy (Jeremiah 43:9-13) - Fulfillment - history
48. Nebuchadnezzar to defeat the Egyptians at Carchemish. Prophecy (Jeremiah 46) - Fulfillment - history.
49. Nebuchadnezzar to be given the mind of an animal because of pride. Prophecy (Daniel 4:19-27) - Fulfillment (Daniel 4:28-37)
50. Belshazzar to have his kingdom removed from him. Prophecy (Daniel 5:5, 25-28) - Fulfillment (Daniel 5:30)
51. Alexander the Great to establish a world empire in a very short time. Prophecy (Daniel 2:32-39, 7:6, 8:5-8, 21, 11:3) - Fulfillment - history
52. Alexander to defeat the Persians - Prophecy (Daniel 8:5-8) - Fulfillment - history
53. Alexander to die at the height of his power and his kingdom to be divided into four parts. Prophecy (Daniel 8:8, 22, 11:4) - Fulfillment - history tells us that at the height of his power Alexander died of a fever in Babylon at the age of 33. After a period of some twenty years of internal struggle and fighting the eleven generals of the Greek army who had survived Alexander were reduced to four called in Scripture the four winds of heaven, Ptolemy, Seleucus, Cassander and Lysimachus.
54. Antiochus Epiphanes to persecute the Jews and desecrate their Temple. Prophecy (Daniel 8:11-25) - Fulfillment - history. The whole of (Daniel 11) represents historical prophecies of the Greek dynasties based on Ptolemy and Seleucus which lasted until the time of Julius Caesar with Cleopatra being the last Greek ruler of Egypt.
55. Zacharias would be mute until the birth of John the Baptist. Prophecy (Luke 1:20) - Fulfillment (Luke 1:57-64)
56. John the Baptist to be the herald for the Lord Jesus Christ. Prophecy (Luke 1:76-77) - Fulfillment (Matthew 3:1-11, Luke 3:2-6)
58. Peter to deny Jesus Christ. Prophecy (John 13:38) - Fulfillment (John 18:24-27)
59. Peter to die as a martyr. Prophecy (John 21:18-19, 2 Peter 1:12-14) - Fulfillment - history
60. Judas to give himself over to Satan. Prophecy (John 6:70) - Fulfillment (John 13:27)
61. Judas to betray Jesus. Prophecy (John 13:21) - Fulfillment (John 18:2-5)
63. Paul would be a minister to the Gentiles. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfillment (Romans 11:13, Ephesians 3:1)
64. Paul would preach before kings. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfillment (Acts 24-26)

INTERPRETATION

In receiving revelation which comes through the Holy Spirit as He teaches the Word of God to a believer in Christ certain basic rules are necessary in order to understand the science of interpretation which is called hermeneutics.
1. The purpose of the Bible as a Whole – each text must be interpreted in the light of the total content of Scripture as the Bible does not contradict itself.
2. The particular message of each book of the Bible – the interpretation of a book must be in conformity with its purpose so Ecclesiastes will need to be interpreted a different way to Psalms or the Revelation.
3. To whom addressed – While all Scripture is equally inspired not all Scripture is equally applicable. For instance in David’s day one could plead with the Lord that the Holy Spirit be not taken away from you Psalm 51:11. Since Pentecost the Holy Spirit has been in all believers and will be forever John 14:16,17.
4. The context – review the surrounding text as top the context and interpret in relation to that context.
6. Accurate exegesis from the original languages.
7. Literal Interpretation - Unless otherwise guided the person should assume a literal interpretation rather than a symbolic.
8. Guard against prejudice - each passage must be allowed to say what it does even if it fails to immediately resolve apparent lack of harmonization with other passages in the Bible.

CONSECRATION
1. Consecration means full surrender of self to God. (Romans 6:13)
2. This is the attitude of “denying self” and “not my will, but yours be done” (Matthew 16:24, 26:39, Galatians 2:20).
3. This is the only acceptable gift to God. (Romans 12:1, 2)
4. The consecration of the Temple is a picture of the believer’s life: the Outer Court (the body), the Holy Place (the soul) and the Holy of Holies (spirit).
5. You are indwelt by the Holy Spirit, and therefore must be set apart as a holy vessel (Romans 12:1-2 cf 1 Kings 8:1-11).

LESSON 6 – THE CANON OF SCRIPTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION
The Bible has only been in its present form as far as contents go since 397 AD. Prior to that they only had scattered manuscripts as far as the New Testament was concerned and a completed Old Testament in the form of the Septuagint, and then back through history. We have one book. In the past they did not.

When you are reading books to get the background to the Bible you need to have a background to ancient history to be able to gauge as to its accuracy because internally it may be consistent but you need to test against others.

For instance there is one text which says that the Septuagint was not written until 300 AD which is in error as it was written and completed around 100 BC.

CANON
Canon means a measuring rule or standard. It comes from the Greek word kanon. The canon of Scripture is the rule of life – Galatians 6:16, Philippians 3:16.

As Bible believers we see this book as God’s book, that God made sure that he got every book, every letter in that book and that only what was His Word got in.

The books of the Bible were canonical as soon as they were written. It did not require a church council to finally select it. Canon meant both the complete Bible with the 66 books and also those books that come to be the rule of life. The councils simply recognised the books that were canonical.

The council of Carthage in 397 AD was the venue for the finalising of the canon. No further book could be added in after that stage. It should be remembered that Paul did not write only 12 - 13 letters. He wrote many more, although the rest were not canonical as they were not inspired by God as Scripture.

In church history we look at bishop’s letters of the 1st and 2nd centuries AD. These are very interesting but they are not canonical. These letters quote from Scripture but are not Scripture themselves.

THE ANCIENT WORLD
In the ancient world very few people had horses so that the they either travelled by boat or walked. The fastest speed of communication was therefore walking pace. In addition unless a person was very wealthy no one in the ancient world owned a book. Any books which existed were in the form of a scroll or codex which was perhaps a metre or so long and 300 mm wide. Every book was hand copied. It was therefore very expensive.
In Rome for example there was, at the time of Paul, some 200 house churches as well as over 100 synagogues in the city of Rome. Paul writes one letter and it goes by one person to the city of Rome and is taken by hand around the churches. The messenger reads Paul's letter and gives an exposition on the letter to that house church. He may stay in that suburb for a couple of days during which time the letter is copied by hand.

The original now goes to the next house church and the same procedure is followed. As a result a number of spelling mistakes crept in causing a slight variety in the letters however with the original being the one from which the copy was taken these variations were not major. It has been found that 95% of all variations in the texts are spelling mistakes.

The Romans tried to eliminate Christianity around the turn of the century with one of the major areas of suppression being book burning. All the leaders of a house church would elect one of their number to be their leader and bishop over a particular group. The Romans would try and capture the bishop, torture him and try to get him to divulge who the elders were and where they kept the sacred books. They thought that if they could destroy the sacred books they could eliminate Christianity.

By the end of the second century many of the copies of the Scriptures had been destroyed and a number of heretical letters had been written. There were many false teachers in the church as seen in Galatians with all the heresies which we have now occurring in the first century. There was also great missionary activity with many people being saved.

A Christian in the Black Sea area said to the Romans that all they were leaving them was their empty pagan temples. Pliny the great writer wrote that “everyone is becoming a Christian”. While he was Governor of Bythinia in 114 AD he tried to eliminate the Christians.

The false writings by the heretics were being claimed as Scripture. This was causing a lot of confusion thus there was increasing demand from the bishops of the various churches to assemble and decide what was acceptable and what was not. Eventually, with Christianity becoming the official State religion of the Roman Empire at the time of Constantine, persecution stopped and through a number of church councils the sacred writings were consolidated and agreed to.

This is also the time when we get the codex such as Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, which many scholars believe is the best source of material. By the year 400 AD therefore a person could have one book to carry with him as the Bible. They also tried to ensure that the version was as accurate as possible.

OLD TESTAMENT

How was the canon formed? With the Old Testament there is internal evidence from the Lord Himself who saw the law of Moses being authoritative as well as quoting from many of the other books. Internally also authors of the Old Testament books quoted from other books.

[c] From Malachi 4:5 there is an indication that the prophetic witness would end with Malachi and not recommence until an Elijah type prophet such as John the Baptist Matthew 17:11-12

THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS

The Dead Sea scrolls are the writings of a sect which flourished 200 BC but were eliminated by the Romans just after the fall of Jerusalem. These people were not Christians but many of the texts refer to the Old Testament. Some of the oldest written copies of the Old Testament are from amongst these scrolls.

About 175 of the 500 Dead Sea Scrolls are biblical. Most famous of these is the Isaiah scroll. The sect was rigorous and the text is therefore probably rigorous as well.

The KJV is translated from the Masoretic text which is from the 10th century but comparison between the Scriptural section of the Dead Sea scrolls and that text shows a remarkable consistency. The scrolls found gave positive evidence of canonicity to all the Old Testament books other than Chronicles, Esther and the Song of Solomon.

OTHER SOURCES

The non-canonical books in the Old Testament or Apocrypha were accepted as valuable books but are not canonical. They were however accepted into the Roman Catholic Bible at the Council of Trent in the 16th century.

A similar group of books called the Pseudepigrapha were rejected as non-canonical as far as the New Testament was concerned. Satan wanted to get false books into the Bible and thereby water it down.
A number of writers in the ancient world also noted those books which were considered sacred. Josephus recognised the 22 books that became the 39 books of the Old Testament as sacred.

In AD 90 a prominent rabbi Jamnia produced a list which left out Esther, Song of Solomon and Ecclesiastes.

The Church Fathers accepted the 39 books of the Old Testament. The apocrypha whilst acknowledged by Augustine as important was not accepted into the Bible until it was by the Roman Catholics in the counter reformation and the Council of Trent in 1546.

**EVIDENCE OF THE NEW TESTAMENT**

[a] Quotation of the Old Testament in the New. All books except Esther, Ecclesiastes and Song of Solomon are quoted in this way. The apocrypha is never quoted.

[b] Matthew 5:18 were seen as authoritative by the Lord Jesus Christ. This includes all the Old Testament.

[c] Luke 11:51 from the death of Abel to Zechariah Abel’s death is in Genesis 4, Zechariah’s death in 2 Chronicles 24. In the Hebrew canon Genesis was the first and 2 Chronicles not Malachi the last.

**TESTS FOR CANONICITY**

They had three tests for every letter when it came for consideration for inclusion in the Bible.

[a] A test of authority - was this written by a prophet, a leader in Israel or a lawgiver as far as the Old Testament was concerned or an apostle, or a close associate of an apostle in the case of the New.


[c] They had to be accepted by the churches.

New Testament Canon


[b] The witness of the first and second century where church fathers recognised all 27 books as canonical.

[c] The Council of Carthage in 397 where the New Testament canon was finally set in place.

Many liberals will only accept 3-4 letters ascribed to Paul to being Pauline but because the Church Fathers went into this so thoroughly when we have something in the New Testament there is a very good reason for it to be in there.

Do not have liberal commentaries, have conservative ones. If you study it thoroughly you will find that your faith in the Bible is on very solid ground. The onus of proof is on the liberals.

The people at Carthage said that the Pauline epistles were written by Paul and being much closer to the situation their statements should have significant weight.

What we have in the canon of Scripture is inspired and has been protected by God through the ages.

**DOCTRINES**

**BIBLE: CANONICITY – see page 6 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]**

**GREEK GRAMMAR**

1. A tense is an expression of the action or the time of the verb. Greek has three tenses:
   a) CONTINUOUS tense which is further subdivided into the PRESENT and IMPERFECT.
      i) PRESENT - implies action in the present time, a dramatic present focuses attention on a dramatic event in history.
      ii) IMPERFECT - continuous action in past time.
   b) COMPLETED tense - action itself has been completed but its results continue - the PERFECT tense. (Ephesians 2:8, 9) "For by grace are ye saved" - literally - for by grace have you been saved in the past with the result you keep on being saved forever through faith.
   c) OCCURRING tense - action of the verb is presently in progress -
   d) AORIST tense which is subdivided into two - POINT OF TIME AORIST and ONCE AND FOR ALL TIME AORIST
      i) (Acts 16:31) - Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved.
      ii) BELIEVE - Point of time Aorist.
iii) SAVED - Once and for all time Aorist.
iv) Believe in a point of time on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved once and for all.

2. The voice of the verb expresses the relationship between the subject and the verb. Greek has three types of voice:
   a) ACTIVE VOICE - the subject produces the action of the verb (Acts 16:31) Believe - you believe.
   b) PASSIVE VOICE - subject receives the action of the verb - the voice of grace.
   c) MIDDLE VOICE - subject is benefited by the action of the verb. (John 15:16)

3. The mood affirms and relates the verb to reality. There are three frequently used moods
   a) IMPERATIVE MOOD - mood of command
   b) INDICATIVE MOOD - mood of reality, indicates that an event actually took place as stated.
   c) SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD - potential mood - maybe yes, maybe no.

4. The Greek conditional clause states a supposition and is classified on the basis of the condition it expresses. There are four conditional clauses -
   a) Type 1 - If, and it is true (Matthew 4:3, 6)
   b) Type 2 - If, but it’s not true. (Matthew 4:9)
   c) Type 3 - If, maybe yes, maybe no. (1 John 1:9)
   d) Type 4 - If, I wish it were true, but it isn’t (1 Peter 3:14)

HEBREW GRAMMAR
1. In the Hebrew there are only 2 tenses:
   a) IMPERFECT - incomplete action.
   b) PERFECT - completed action.

2. In order to express different meanings the stems on the verbs are used:
   a) KAL - a simple declarative statement indicative active.
   b) NIPHAL - passive and sometimes reflective.
   c) HITHPAHEL - reflective.
   d) PIHEL - Intensive stem - active.
   e) PUHAL - Intensive passive.
   f) HIPHIL - Causative - active.
   g) HOPHAL - Causative - passive.

3. Example QATAL - to kill:
   a) KAL - someone kills.
   b) NIPHAL - you are killed.
   c) HITHPAEL - suicide.
   d) PIEL - you kill in a horrible manner.
   e) PUAL - you are killed in a horrible manner.
   f) HIPHIL - Murder incorporated - you cause someone to be killed without being involved.
   g) HOPHAL - you are the victim of murder incorporated.

LESSON 7 - THE BIBLE ITS SUBJECT AND PURPOSE

INTRODUCTION
What is God trying to say in the 66 books which make up the Bible? In John 20:30-31, 21:25 John gives the reason for his writing, looking back over 60 years to the time of the Lord's ministry. Here he sees the purpose of the incarnation, life and death of the Lord Jesus Christ. He has written these to record the signs that truly indicated that Jesus Christ was truly God and the Saviour. The reason John writes and by implication the reason all the other authors write is that one might have concrete evidence of the way of salvation.

The primary subject of the Bible is the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. In the Old Testament we have the Lord Jesus Christ in his preincarnate form as a Christophony and prophecies. The Bible is a "history" book - His story. The Bible is about Him. Everything looks towards Him, at Him or back to Him. There is no other celebrity other than the Lord. All teaching that is Biblical has this theme. Beware of the preacher who leaves you with thoughts of him rather than praise for the Lord Jesus Christ.

In Colossians 1:12-23 Paul sings a hymn of praise about the Lord Jesus Christ. This is the whole purpose of Scripture. Paul says that he is writing this to give us God's plan for your salvation and sanctification. Paul states that he is a "diakonos", a minister or server at tables. The minister is a servant of the people who ensures they are fed with spiritual food. He was committed to serve the people whom the Lord had provided for him, to serve them with doctrine.
The reason that we know about subjects such as salvation is that people like Paul under the guidance of the Holy Spirit wrote it down. The purpose of the book is that we might do what the apostles did and more, that we might walk with Christ also and have the facts.

In verses 15-18 we see the purpose is also that we should serve him for what he has done. He comes from eternity past to create, to become man, provide salvation and to be the Lord of eternity. The Bible covers the period from eternity past to eternity future entering into time to give us instructions as to how we are to live in time and shows us in a small way what it is going to be like in eternity.

What Paul does in these three verses the Bible does in its sixty six books. It shows how time fits and you fit in the big picture. The unbeliever is not in touch with the reality of the big picture whilst often the believer is either ignorant or forgets the big context. We are part of a big plan and it is only when sometimes we are subject to major testing that we focus on this. The only celebrity in the Bible is the Lord Jesus Christ. We are not to look at men, circumstances or ourselves, we are to look at Him.

THERE ARE FOUR SPECIFIC ASPECTS OF OUR LORD

[a] He is the creator - Colossians 1:16 - there is a person, there is a plan, there is a personality behind the physical world. This universe did not happen by chance. The Bible tells us that there is a mind behind it.

[b] The Lord Jesus Christ is a ruler and is not an impersonal creator who is letting His creation tick over. He rules not out of the world but involved in the world. He is a sovereign supreme ruler. This means that history is not out of his control. Everything that is happening is happening under his guidance. Not all things are good but they are under his overall control. There is an answer to evil and the problems that evil causes.

[c] He is the incarnate Word Genesis 1 John 1 - He is the "logos" of John 1 and has made himself known, He was made flesh and has not left man in the dark. Every other religion we have man talking about their concept of God, only in Christianity do you have God become man.

[d] The Lord Jesus Christ is our Saviour which again makes Christianity unique. God has a plan of salvation for whosoever will may come. It is the record of the revelation of the Lord Jesus Christ and the impact that it has.

Man also has a very major part in the Bible. The history of man is also given in the Scriptures. From the beginning it stresses the eternal life dimension in the history of man. It is a good introduction to both archaeology and anthropology as well as ancient history.

Recommended reading for Anthropology Arthur Custance - The Doorway Papers which gives the subject from a Biblical viewpoint. Genesis is history. There is a lot of history of the emergence of man in Genesis chapters 10-12 with the linguistic and cultural background for most of the people of the world being given. It is interestingly accurate as well as being unique. Whilst not being a history text book what history is contained in it is absolutely accurate and as such it is first class history. Archaeologists over the last 200 years has confirmed the Bible account in many ways with their finds especially in the Middle East.

There are many examples of people being convicted and converted by the evidence of the Scriptures as to their accuracy and truth providing they look at them in depth and honestly. If you study the Scriptures they will come to life.

The Bible is to Show the Glory of God

The purpose of the Bible - According to the written Word of God one supreme purpose is revealed in all that God has done or will do from the beginning of creation to the outermost reaches of eternity. This supreme purpose is the manifestation of the glory of God. For this one purpose angels were created, the material universe was designed to reflect that glory and man was created in the image and likeness of God.

In the inscrutable wisdom of God even sin was permitted and redemption was provided with a view towards the realisation of this supreme purpose. The purpose behind everything is the glory of God.

The purpose of the Bible was to explain the unfolding drama of redemption for the glory of God. The purpose of our salvation is the glory of God. In the endless ages of eternity every living creature will praise God for what He has done. They will magnify His name because they will see His glory in everything that He has provided.

Why do we serve Christ in the church - that He may be glorified. Everything in our lives should revolve around two words - "His glory". Why do we suffer - His glory, why do we have pressure - His glory.

The centrality of the truth that God's plan will lead to His glory in that when all things are seen finally His name will be glorified. We do not have all the answers but we are confident in Him who has all the answers.

The Bible is God's message to man
The Bible records that angels, men and the universe were created for His glory Psalm 19.

The nation Israel was formed for the glory of God.

Salvation is for the glory of God.

All Christian service should be done for the glory of God

Our desire and passion should be that God is glorified in us.

Our death should be to the glory of God.

We are to share the glory of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The Bible is different from any other book in the world. It stands supreme in reflecting the place of man and his opportunity of salvation, the supreme character and work of the Lord Jesus Christ as the only Saviour and gives all and in detail the infinite glories that belong to God himself. It is the one book that reveals the Creator to the creature and discloses the plan by which man with all his imperfections can be reconciled and in eternal fellowship with the eternal God.

The purpose of the Bible - God's Glory, the subject - the Lord Jesus Christ. Our response - to get to know the subject and let the purpose be fulfilled in our lives to His glory forever.

DOCTRINES

IGNORANCE

1. On a number of occasions believers are commanded not to be ignorant. As the Bible is the mind of Christ (1 Cor 2:16) the more we know about the scriptures the less our ignorance of God's viewpoint.
2. The areas of ignorance deal with past, present and future events.
3. PAST - due to pride.
   a) That God's righteousness is by faith rather than by man's works. (Rom 10:3). "For they being ignorant of God's righteousness and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God."
   b) That God has a future for Israel. (Rom 11:25,26)
   c) That believers should not be ignorant of history or the scriptures pertaining to how God dealt with Israel in the past. (1 Cor 10:1-4).
4. PRESENT - Due to immaturity of the believer.
   a) To the existence and use of spiritual gifts. (1 Cor 12:1)
   b) To the use of suffering in the Christian life for development. (2 Cor 1:8).
   c) To Satan's devices in deceiving believers. (2 Cor 2:11)
5. FUTURE  To the existence of the translation or rapture of the Church as a source of comfort to church age believers (1 Thess 4:13-18).

HUMILITY – see page 41 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

SPIRITUALITY – see page 67 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

POWER

1. Five Greek words for power.
   a) Dunamis - from which we get dynamite - inherent power.
   b) Energes - from which we get energy - operational power.
   c) Kratos - part of our word autocratic - ruling power.
   d) Iscuous - endowed power.
   e) Exhusios - authoritative power or authority.
2. God's power is available to all believers.
   a) God the Father's power. (1 Peter 1:5)
   b) God the Son's power (2 Corinthians 12:9, 10)
   c) God the Holy Spirit's power. (Acts 1:8)
   d) The power of the Word. (Hebrews 4:12)
   e) Kingdom of God power. (1 Corinthians 4:20)

LESSON 8 THE BIBLE AS DIVINE REVELATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Bible – God's Revelation [57]</td>
<td>John 17:3-5&lt;br&gt;Romans 1:18-23&lt;br&gt;John 16:8-11&lt;br&gt;Acts 17:22-33</td>
<td>Heathenism&lt;br&gt;Fundamentalism&lt;br&gt;Revelation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BOOK 1 – SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY 111 22
INTRODUCTION

God's purpose is that man should know Him and therefore respond to God in honour and worship motivated by love. In the written word we have the living word revealed. It all centres on knowing God which in turn is based on Revelation. This ties in with Lesson 5.

John 17 is the real Lord's prayer and gets you into the heart of God. v 3-5 Here we see that before He goes to the cross the Lord Jesus Christ is thinking of us and wishes to us to know Him and the Father and His love.

CONTEMPLATING GOD

The Scripture attests to two facts, the incomprehensibility of God and the know ability of God. These must be balanced. We can never fully understand God but there are many things we can know. When we look at the character of God we realise that there are many things that we can know about the Lord. But there are some things that can only be known in the future. God is not a big man as the Mormons believe, God is God.

Contemplating the vastness of the universe at night we get an outline of just how great God is. This will give one the idea of the incomprehensibility of God. There will be some things that you will not know this side of eternity. We are creatures who are talking about the Creator. We however can say that what is needed to be known about God has been revealed. In addition everything in the Bible can be known. 1 Corinthians 2:14-16

Characteristics of the Knowledge of God

[a] The Source of the knowledge of God is God himself. Human experiences and even religious experiences are not reliable in the accurate presentation of God. The Bible is what is sure of God's viewpoint and information about God. Any experience must be tested against the Bible. Romans 1:18-32 reminds us that man is fallen and that man's view of life is warped by the fallen state. However anyone who has lived on the earth has sufficient evidence from nature of the existence of God. Even with this evidence however most men will reject or distort the truth because they do not want to know Him. Fallen men will create his own god which he can manipulate. What Paul is talking about is general revelation which is available to all.

[b] Its Content - A full knowledge of God is both factual and personal. To know facts about a person without knowing the person is limiting; to know a person without knowing facts about that one is shallow. God has revealed many facts about Himself, all of which are important in making our personal relationship with Him close, intelligent, and useful. Had He only revealed facts without making it possible to know Him personally, such factual knowledge would have little, certainly not eternal, usefulness. Just as with human relationships, a Divine-human relationship cannot begin without knowledge of some minimal truths about the Person; then the personal relationship generates the desire to know more facts which in turn deepens the relationship, and so on.

[c] Its Progressiveness - The knowledge of God and His works was revealed progressively throughout history. The most obvious proof is to compare incomplete Jewish theology with the fuller revelation of Christian theology in respect, for example, to such doctrines as the Trinity, Christology, the Holy Spirit, Resurrection, and eschatology. To trace that progressiveness is the task of biblical theology.

[d] Its Purposes - God does not reveal Himself that people might know Him but get into a relationship with Him only. 1. To lead people to the possession of eternal life (John 17:3; 1 Tim. 2:4). 2. To foster Christian growth (2 Peter 3:18) with doctrinal knowledge (John 7:17; Rom. 6:9, 16; Eph. 1:18), and with a discerning lifestyle (Phil. 1:9-10; 2 Peter 1:5). 3. To warn of judgement to come (Hosea 4:6; Heb. 10:26-27). 4. To generate true worship of God (Rom. 11:33-36).

Four factors that are prerequisites to the knowledge of God:-

[a] God initiated the process. Where was the creator, God came to man in the garden.

[b] God gave language in order that he might be able to communicate with fellow man and also with God. This is an area which causes a lot of trouble with the thinking evolutionist.

[c] Man was created in the image of God with free will, a mind that can think. Man is able to think in a rational way. Even though man is subject to total depravity. This means that you are unable to save yourself. However man is still fashioned in the likeness of God and is not totally depraved in that sense. We still have a mind, a will and a conscience even though it is a violated one.
[d] God gave the Holy Spirit to convict the unbeliever and convert the repentant. John 16:8-11

Three General Areas of Revelation

There are three general areas of revelation - Creation, the Lord Jesus Christ and the Bible. However we have the necessity of the ministry of the Holy Spirit to understand these things. 1 Corinthians 2:14-16 In addition men may wish to reject it. Romans 1:18-32 Thus general revelation is also specific revelation.

Acts 17:22-31 - is a tremendous sermon. Paul has talked about general revelation in creation, the Lord Jesus Christ and the Bible as well as a couple of Greek poets. to show the Greeks that even their poets recognised general revelation. What is Paul relying on to effect their salvation?, the work of the Holy Spirit. He is relying on specific revelation as the first Christian in Athens. Paul noted that they had a shrine to an unknown God. He said that he was going to show them the real God through the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. Some of those in the audience believed and were saved. There was a mixing of general and specific revelation as there were those who believed.

You have to meet the pagan where they are with general revelation and not where you are. You move from general to specific revelation, from where they are to where the Cross is. This challenges the unbeliever. The evangelist may not fully understand the means of witnessing. If however you do know what to do you will know how to do it right.

Methods of Understanding the Existence of God

These are various methods of understanding that God exists.

[a] Cosmological argument that God created. This fact is countered by the evolutionist's concept of matter being eternal.

[b] Organisational - the universe speaks of design therefore there must be a master designer.

[c] Anthropological - which looks at the concept of life after death and that man is not just an animal which does not exist after death

[d] The ontological approach propounded by St Anselm in the ninth century and presented further by Des Cartes and Hegel. This states that because we conceive of a Supreme Holy Being such a being exists.

General revelation does not prove anything to anyone who does not want to know. It is however the basis of just condemnation of the unbeliever. In the end all will recognise God and He will get all the glory.

Contents of General Revelation

[a] His Glory Psalm 19:1

[b] His power to work in creating the universe Psalm 19:1

[c] His supremacy Romans 1:20

[d] His divine nature Romans 1:20

[e] His providential control of nature Acts 14:17

[f] His goodness Matthew 5:45

[g] His intelligence Acts 17:29

[h] His living existence Acts 17:28

Three results of General revelation.

[a] God's grace is displayed

[b] It gives weight to the case that God exists

[c] To justly condemn rejecters.

God has given a complete revelation to man as far as is required by man. The rejection of this revelation is an act of man's sinful nature for which man is responsible. Man is therefore justly judged.
Other examples of general revelation John 3:16-18, 5:30 ff. You have the evidence of many things but you reject it because you do not want the truth. This is why you are responsible for your rejection. John 12:44-48. When the unbeliever rejects the gospel it should be made clear that if the rejection continues the end of it is hell. God is knowable but not totally comprehensible. However everything we need to know is in writing. What we have in writing we should be able to understand all of it.

SPECIAL REVELATION

Throughout the history of man, God has given special revelation. Many instances are recorded in the Word of God of His speaking directly to man as He did in the Garden of Eden or to the prophets of the Old Testament or the apostles in the New Testament.

Some of this special revelation was recorded in the Bible and forms the only authoritative and inspired record that we have of such special revelation. Upon completion of the sixty-six books in the Bible, special revelation in the ordinary sense seems to have ceased.

DOCTRINES

HEATHENISM AND GOD CONSCIOUSNESS see page 37 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

FUNDAMENTALISM

1. Fundamentalism requires belief in:-
   a) The deity of Christ and the virgin birth
   b) The miracles of Christ
   c) The cross of Christ on which He paid for the sins of the world as God's efficacious substitutionary sacrifice
   d) The bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ
   e) The certainty of the yet to come Second Coming of the Lord for His church and to judge
   f) The inerrancy of the Bible as the Word of God

2. False teachers and liberal theologians will distort all or some of these doctrines.

REVELATION

God's purpose is that man should know Him and therefore respond to God in honour and worship motivated by love. In the written word we have the living word revealed. It all centres on knowing God which is in turn based on Revelation.

1. The source of the knowledge of God is God himself. Human experiences and even religious experiences are not reliable in the accurate presentation of God. The Bible is what is sure of God's viewpoint and information about God. Any experience must be tested against the Bible. Romans 1:18-32 reminds us that man is fallen and that man's view of life is warped by the fallen state. However anyone who has lived on the earth has sufficient evidence from nature of the existence of God. Even with this evidence however most men will reject or distort the truth because they do not want to know Him. Fallen men will create his own god which he can manipulate. What Paul is talking about is general revelation which is available to all.

2. There is however specific revelation which is the personal confrontation of man through the prophets, teachers and pre-eminently through the Lord Jesus Christ. Those who accept general revelation will receive specific revelation.

3. It is progressive, that through the history of man God has revealed more and more about Himself.

4. God does not reveal Himself that people might know Him but for them to get into a relationship with Him.

5. Four factors that are prerequisites to the knowledge of God:
   a) God initiated the process. Where was the creator, God came to man in the garden.
   b) God gave language in order that he might be able to communicate with fellow man and also with God. This is an area which causes a lot of trouble with the thinking evolutionist.
   c) Man was created in the image of God with free will, a mind that can think. Man is able to think in a rational way. Even though man is subject to total depravity. This means that you are unable to save yourself. However man is still fashioned in the likeness of God and is not totally depraved in that sense. We still have a mind, a will and a conscience even though it is a violated one.
   d) God gave the Holy Spirit to convict the unbeliever and convert the repentant. John 16:8-11

6. Paul in Acts 17:22-31 gave a message about general revelation in creation, the Lord Jesus Christ and the Bible as well as a couple of Greek poets. to show the Greeks that even their poets recognised general revelation.

What Paul is relying on to effect their salvation is the work of the Holy Spirit. He is relying on specific revelation as the first Christian in Athens. You have an unknown God. Paul said. He was going to show the real God through the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. Some of those in the audience believed and were saved.

There was a mixing of general and specific revelation as there were those who believed. You have to meet the pagan where they are with general revelation. You move from general to specific revelation, from where they are to where the Cross is. This challenges the unbeliever.

General revelation does not prove anything to anyone who does not want to know. It is however the basis of just condemnation of the unbeliever. In the end all will recognise God and He will get all the glory.

7. General Revelation
   a) His Glory Psalm 19:1
   b) His power to work in creating the universe Psalm 19:1
   c) His supremacy Romans 1:20
   d) His divine nature Romans 1:20
[e] His providential control of nature Acts 14:17
[f] His goodness Matthew 5:45
[g] His intelligence Acts 17:29
[h] His living existence Acts 17:28
8. Results of General revelation.
[a] God's grace is displayed
[b] To give weight to the case that God exists
[c] To justly condemn rejecters.

SECTION B – THEOLOGY PROPER – THE STUDY OF GOD

LESSON 9 - GOD - THE TRINITY

INTRODUCTION

In Matthew 28:19-20 at the Great Commission it is quite clear that the people are sent out in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit indicating that there are three personalities in the Godhead. There is therefore triunity or trinity.

In many other passages in the Scriptures two or more members of the Godhead are mentioned as equal. Every cult in some way abrogates the Trinity. These cults have been around since the first century.

Comprehension of the Trinity

It is quite difficult to comprehend the concept of three personalities and yet unity in the Godhead as it is a violation of our own intellect. Cultists will say that the Trinity does not make sense but this problem for the unbeliever is covered in 1 Corinthians 2:14 where the unbeliever cannot understand spiritual matters as they are spiritually discerned. Our perception of the mechanics of this is limited but we should not expect human logic alone to cope with this concept.

It is important to note however that God has decided to reveal Himself to man in this way and that this is therefore the way in which he ought to be understood. Trinity and unity have their own characteristics.

Trinity and Unity

Trinity and unity have their own relationships in the Character of God. There is unity in character but trinity in personalities. As you go through the Bible where you have the character of God being expressed you have unity, where you have personalities dealing with mankind you have trinity. We can see the unity of the character of God in the different ways in which God has revealed Himself to man. In the case of trinity however we have to be careful with illustrations and concept as it is easy to go into heresy by taking it one step too far.

There is obviously many important reasons behind this. In eternity we will understand fully. Trinity and unity have their corresponding words in the essence of God.

Unity - essence or character.
Trinity - personality.

God is one in essence but revealed as three in person. This is especially true of times when a person from the Godhead is dealing with man. This assists us in understanding God.

In this subject we are introduced to the importance of theology. It is very important that the examples you use accurately reflect this doctrine otherwise some may be led astray. Both the Mormons and the Jehovah's Witnesses have a false view in this area and will confuse believers who are not well taught.

The word Trinity is not found in the Bible nor are other related biblical terms. Nevertheless the doctrine grows out of the Scriptures and therefore it is a Biblical teaching.

From the Scriptures we see that:-[a] God is Spirit  [b] God has manifested Himself  [c] This manifestation is visible  [d] Man saw glimpses of God through these manifestations.
There is a problem of comprehension as we are physical and God is spirit. We must worship God in spirit and in truth. We are to see it as it is revealed.

The angel of the Lord is a clear manifestation of God and associated with God.

There are many names of God, the two main ones being Elohim and Jehovah. Elohim is in the plural which shows unity and trinity. Often you will have singular and plural together in the same verse.

The contribution of the New Testament is that whilst it does not contain specific reference to the triunity of God it does give a lot of evidence.

**One Verse not to Use**

It should be noted that it is clear from the evidence that we have that John did not write 1 John 5:7. This is important because if you want to talk about the trinity this is one verse you do not use. No Greek text has this verse in and it did not appear in versions prior to the fifteenth century. It has been inserted as a commentary. It entered the Vulgate, the Latin version of the Bible. Erasmus in the fifteenth century left this verse out of the first edition of his Greek manuscript stating that it did not occur in any of the originals. He relented however and under pressure included it in the second and subsequent editions.

**Verses in the New Testament**

The prime passage for unity, trinity and triunity is Matthew 28:19,20. Other passages include Matthew 3:16-17, John 10:30 and 2 Corinthians 13:14. In 1 Corinthians 8:4-6 we have the unity of God maintained but the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ mentioned in the same language showing that they are equals.

Believers in the Lord Jesus Christ who are growing do not have general problems with the trinity. The people who have problems generally have problems with most doctrines if they are saved at all.

**Definitions:**

- “There is one only and true God but in the unity of the Godhead there are three co-equal and co-eternal persons, the same in substance but different in subsistence”.

- “There is one only and true God, but in the unity of the Godhead there are three coeternal and coequal Persons, the same in substance but different in subsistence”

- There is one only and true God but in the unity of the Godhead there are three co-equal and co-eternal persons, the same in character but different in the work they do”.

**False Concepts**

The theological perspective from where the Jehovah’s witnesses and the Mormons are coming from is that the Father is said to have created the son and therefore they are not co-equal and co-eternal. This is false. The second concept is one of “procreation” where one sent the other, the Father sent the Son and the Son sent the Holy Spirit. They therefore say we do not have equality we have a hierarchy. This is not true from a Biblical basis.

**The Early Church**

There were a number of people in the early church that had a Unitarian outlook. The church in those times did not formulate any clear statement concerning the Trinity.

Theodotus of Byzantium about 210 viewed Jesus as a man who was given special powers by the Holy Spirit at His baptism. Another group at about the same time concluded that the Father was incarnated in the Son and suffered in the Son.

Arius [250-336] from Alexandria distinguished between the One Eternal God from the Son who was generated by the Father and thus had a beginning.

He was opposed by Athanasius who held to three persons in the Trinity of one essence.

It was as a result of controversy in the church that the teaching had to be clarified resulting in the Nicene creed. In 381 at the Council of Constantinople this concept was given in its final form.

**Practical Application**

The practical outworkings of the Trinity is demonstrated various areas of practical doctrine
All persons of the Godhead are involved in Redemption - John 3:16, Revelation 13:8
Both the Son and the Spirit are involved in Revelation - John 1:18, 16:13
Fellowship with God can only be on the basis of fellowship in the Godhead. John 14:17
Priority without inferiority is seen in the proper relationship between men and women - 1 Corinthians 11:3
Prayer is seen to involve the Trinity with petitions addressed to the Father, in the power of the Spirit and through the Son. John 14:14, Ephesians 1:6, 2:18, 6:18
Baptism is in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit Matthew 28:19,20

DOCTRINES

NAMES AND TITLES OF GOD see page 49 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]
ANGEL OF JEHOVAH see page 3 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]
TRINITY see page 70 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

TRINITY IN THE TITLES OF GOD

1. The three in one Matthew 28:19,20,
2. The Lord's Baptism - Matthew 3:16-17 where the Spirit descends, the Father speaking from heaven and the Son being baptised.
3. We have the Father sending the Son in John 3:16, in John 14-17 we have the Son sending the Spirit.
4. We have the three fold titles of God Romans 5, 1 Corinthians 12: 4-6, Ephesians 1, Romans 15
5. The Holy Spirit is called God in Acts 5:1-5, 1 Corinthians 3 and called the Lord in 2 Corinthians 3:17.
6. The works of the Lord are ascribed to the Father John 17:1-5, the Holy Spirit responsible for the procreation of the Son Luke 1:35, 2:11; the Son doing the will of the Father John 8, 10, the Holy Spirit sustaining the Son. Matthew 18:28, John 3:34
7. The Trinity are involved in the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ in the first advent. The death of the Lord Jesus Christ is the co operative work of the Trinity. The Father gives the son Romans 8:32, the Lord lays down his life John 10:18, the Holy Spirit empowers Him to offer Himself on the Cross Hebrews 9:11-15.
8. On the Cross He addresses the other two members of the Trinity when He cried out "My God, My God why has thou forsaken me?"
9. All three were involved in the resurrection
   (a) the Father - Colossians 2:12
   (b) the Son as the person who was raised - John 2:19, 10:18, 1 Peter 3:18
   (c) The Holy Spirit was involved in His resurrection - Romans 8:11. The Father, Son and the Holy Spirit will be involved in our resurrection.
10. The indwelling of the believer - John 14:23, we are the temple of the Holy Spirit - 1 Corinthians 6:19, we have the power in us - Ephesians 4:6, the Lord in us - Colossians 1:27

LESSON 10 – CHARACTER OF GOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 10 | Character of God  | Romans 11:33-36 | Character of God  
|    | [79]             |       | God Cares for you  
|    |                  |       | Miracles of God    |

INTRODUCTION

People have slightly different approaches to this subject as this is one of the regions in Bible study where creatures with limited concepts are attempting to come to terms with the characteristics of God. When you are teaching this vital doctrine as long as you are consistent you will be all right.

This is a very deep concept to which you will go back time and time again. This foundation doctrine combined with the confession of sins should be thoroughly taught to your congregation.

The various perfections of God, which some calls them are not component parts of God. Even when we have a list it is not exhaustive. All of the qualities of God are absolute. He is the creator of everything. The definitions are therefore unique. We however are limited.
Romans 11:33-36 - this is Paul talking about the attributes of God. Paul ends his brief talk to the Romans about the character of God with a prayer. He ends with a poem of praise. You should ensure that when you are teaching this there is practical application to those you are teaching for every attribute. When you study this subject it should be with thanks and awe.

ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

[a] The attributes of God are not component parts like bricks in a wall.

[b] He is much more than the sum of the attributes that we see in Him.

[c] They are known through revelation. The sole source of knowledge about this is the Word of God.

[d] The character of God describe equally the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. God is one in essence and three in person.

WHAT DO THESE CHARACTERISTICS MEAN TO ME?

There are three categories given which is the classical theological approach:-

[a] Moral and Non Moral - Self existence and infinity are non moral, Justice and holiness have moral impact.

[b] Absolute and Relative - Absolute deal with the essence of God as considered in itself such as eternity and infinity whilst Relative deal with his relationship with his creation such as righteousness, justice and truth.

[c] Incommunicable and communicable - some things you can talk about and some you cannot. You cannot talk infinity and eternity as we cannot conceive of such items as we are controlled by time and space.

This type of approach which is theological and philosophical is not helpful often from a practical point of view. In order for all to understand you must understand it and approach it humbly. Some list 14 attributes whilst the Bible Topic Book gives 10.

Other examples Eternity [EL], Freedom, Holiness [R+J], Immutability [U], Infinity, Love [L], Omnipotence [AP], Omnipresence [E], Omniscience [AK], Righteousness[R], Simplicity, Sovereignty [S], Truth [T], Unity. Freedom - means God is independent of His creatures and His creation Isaiah 40:13-14, Infinity – means that God has no bounds or limits by time or space Acts 17:24-28, Simplicity – means God is not a composite as we are, He is Spirit – John 4:24, Unity – means that there is one God who is indivisible. Deuteronomy 6:4 Ephesians 4:6

God is independent of his Creation and is free to use His free will in whatever way He chooses. We cannot put God in our debt which is the answer to legalism.

God does not change. Application - we can depend totally on Him.

Holiness is the standard of God which we need to attain as a believer to attain.

Application - When you have to decide what is all right to do and what is not ask the question. Is it holy?. Is there no hint of sin in it?.

Do not be concerned about teaching your congregation an odd long word which they may learn as a category such as omniscience rather than all knowing. They may remember that characteristic when they are in trouble as one of the three O's and be able to use it in a practical way. You count it all joy when in difficulty as you can apply it to your problem. God is a spirit and not three things. Sovereignty of God - he is in charge but this does not blot out the free will of man. The Calvinists magnify this attribute above the others whilst the liberals magnify the love of God almost to a point of heresy.

six names of God, the Tetragrammaton Jehovah or Adonai. These give additional characteristics and by going through the names of God you can impress the importance of the perfection of the characteristics of God. In the N.T we have Theos, Kurios and others.

We have seen that God is omnipresent but this has to be balanced by God as a personality otherwise we fall into pantheism that God is in everything which is an eastern religion concept. Holiness is given in pages 36 and following. The mercy of God is also a good topic and he finishes on the faithfulness of God. Always end your study with the concept that God is faithful. When all else fails God does not. We should realise that we are in the hands of the mighty God. Our God is not too small.

The holiness of God has to come before the love of God. Do not teach the character of God alphabetically.

The following table has been found by many to be a good way of remembering the Character of God.
CHARACTER OF GOD | [NAMES] | CHARACTER OF GOD | [LETTERS]
---|---|---|---
SOVEREIGN | ALL KNOWING | S | AK
RIGHTeousNESS | ALL POWERFUL | R | AP
JUSTICE | EVERYWHERE | J | E
LOVE | UNCHAGEABLE | L | U
ETERNAL LIFE | TRUTH | EL | T

DOCTRINES

GOD: CHARACTER OF GOD see page 34 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

GOD CARES FOR YOU see page 35 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

MIRACLES AND GOD'S CHARACTER

Miracles demonstrate the attributes of God:
1. The Sovereignty of God was illustrated in:-
   a) the Lord's creative work of turning water into wine at Cana. (John 2:1-11)
   b) His power when stilling the storm on Galilee. (Mark 4:35-41; Matthew 8:18)
   c) the feeding of the 5000 and the 4000. (Mark 6:33-44; 8:1-9)
   d) walking on the water at Galilee. (Mark 6:47-52)
   e) His arrest in Gethsemane. (John 18:6)
2. The Righteousness of God was illustrated in:-
   the Lord's transfiguration before the disciples on the mountain, when they saw the Holiness of God in the Lord displayed. (Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36)
3. The Justice of God was illustrated in:-
   the cursing of the fig tree during the last week before the cross as a sign of His coming judgment upon unresponsive Israel. (Matthew 21:18-22; Mark 11:12-14, 20-26)
4. The Love of God was illustrated in:-
   all the healing ministries as the Lord's compassion flowed into action, even to the exhaustion of His humanity. While thirty-six specific miracles of the Lord are recorded, many thousands of healing miracles are passed over in a few isolated verses. (eg. Matthew 9:35-36, 14:14, 15:30-31, 8:16-17 etc.)
5. The Eternal Life of God was illustrated in:-
   the great miracle of the resurrection of Christ.
6. The Omniscience of God was illustrated in:-
   a) his knowledge of where unseen shoals of fish were. (Matthew 4:18-22, Mark 1:16-20, John 21:1-14)
   b) where the fish was with just enough money in its mouth to pay the required tax. (Matthew 17:24-27)
   c) the knowledge about Nathaniel and the woman at the well at Sychar also shows his omniscience. (John 1:45-51; 4:5-43)
7. The Omnipresence of God was illustrated in:-
   His ability to appear in various places many kilometres apart demonstrating the truth of His promise to be with believers always. (Matthew 28:20)
8. The Omnipotence of God was illustrated in:-
   the raising of people such as Lazarus from the dead.
9. The Immutability of God was illustrated in:-
   the repetition of the miracle of the draught of fishes both before and after the resurrection showing that His character and power were unchanged.
10. The Veracity of God was illustrated in:-
    the healing of the Centurion's servant and the Nobleman's son. The Lord said they were healed, and at that moment, many kilometres away, they were. (Matthew 8:5-13, Luke 7:1-10, John 4:46-54)
11. The Grace of God was illustrated in:-
    the healing of Malchus' ear in the garden on the night of the Lord's arrest (Luke 22:50). It was a testimony to His Grace that as he faced the horror of the cross, our Lord could still stoop and heal one of His captors. It is significant that the last recorded miracle performed by the Lord before the cross benefited an enemy, one who had come to arrest him.

LESSON 11 - THE FATHERHOOD OF GOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 John 4:9,10</td>
<td>Fatherhood of God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Titus 3:3-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Romans 4:13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Romans 8:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>John 8:30-47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

This is one of the significant doctrines of Christian theology which is unique to Christianity.

Father is a word that is personal and relational. It shows that God cares and provides. There is therefore a relationship that it is possible for believers to have with God the Father. The Father is the first person in the Trinity and is represented as loving, electing and bestowing, the Son as redeeming, suffering and upholding and the Spirit as regenerating, indwelling, regenerating, baptising, energising and sanctifying.

The revelation of the Trinity allows it to be portrayed in a relationship way. God the Father is seen as the first person of the Trinity but is not superior to the Son or the Holy Spirit who are equally God. The words Father and Son are words of accommodation showing relationship rather than superiority. The Father did not form the Son and then between them they formed the Holy Spirit - this is a false concept called the doctrine of procession. Jehovah’s Witnesses and other cults teach this. We need to allow God to reveal Himself rather than we superimpose our concepts on Him.

God’s Relation With Man

God’s relationship with man is divided into three aspects:-

[a] The Father planned it and is the author of the plan.
[b] The Son executes the plan
[c] The Holy Spirit makes the plan real to humanity.

These concepts are before time with no time distinction.

Fatherhood - Fatherhood comes in various concepts:-

[1] Fatherhood over creation - Ephesians 3:14-15 - all beings have their origin in God. We get our life and very existence from God. There is therefore a brotherhood in the creation. The liberals however take this a step further and talk about the brotherhood of man and the universal Fatherhood of God.

This is a lie that is exposed by the Lord Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ said that all men are not brothers but only become such in Christ. It is noted that even Satan was given his life by God as he is created. There is no relationship in the Father - creation combination.

[2] Fatherhood by intimate relationship which is the concept of the relationship between God and Israel. - Exodus 4:22 - Israel is my son - this is my firstborn. This is more than God saying that He is their creator but it is less than saying that they are regenerated. In the New Testament it says that all Israel is not Israel.

There is however a relationship between the Father and Israel, a care for Israel. He preserves the nation. In the Bible the word father is used a large number of times in relation to the relationship between God and Israel. However only a few Jews were regenerated.

[3] A specific relationship between the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ - Ephesians 1:3. The first specific revelation of the New Testament is that God the Father is the father of the Lord Jesus Christ. It also shows without any doubt the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ by His attributes and His works.

The words father and son are used in the New Testament to show the intimacy of the relationship between God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ with out fulfilling all the relationships which would be true of a human relationship of Father and Son. This was the error of the Arian theologians who said that he was a son of God but not equal with God.

The Father And The Son

The second person has been the Son from eternity past. For eternity there has been this close relationship between the Father and the Son. In Isaiah 9:6 it shows that a child is born but a son is given. The baby was born but the Son was given as the Son had existed forever. What they are saying is that you think of the most noble father and the best possible son and the love between those two and you get a small glimpse of the relationship between the Father and the Son.

In Summary

[a] The Son of God is said to have been begotten of the Father - Psalm 2:7, John 1:14, 18, 3:16,18 1 John 4:9
[b] The Father acknowledged the Lord Jesus Christ as His Son - Matthew 3:17, 17:5, Luke 9:35
The Father is acknowledged by the Son - Matthew 11:27, 26:63-64, Luke 22:29, John 8:16-29, 33-44, 17:1 The Son is subject to the Father's plan but it should be remembered that the plan had been a joint plan when it was conceived with its recognition of role and responsibility.

The fact that God the Father is acknowledged by men to be the Father of the Lord Jesus Christ - Matthew 16:16, Mark 15:39, John 1:34, 49, Acts 3:13

The Son acknowledges the Father by being subject to Him - John 8:29,49

Even the demons recognise this relationship between the Father and the Son - Matthew 8:29 Satan's eternal damnation relies on this relationship and its permanency

The relationship between the Father and the Son is also shown in the giving of the Son to us. Man's response to God is in contrast with the Son's relationship with the Father. The response of the Son to the Father is a challenge for us. Have you talked to your Father today. The Lord told us to pray to the Father as our Father. It does not matter what your human father was like you can have a close relationship with your heavenly Father. Begin with confession and end with praise. True worship is grounded in this doctrine.

If you can encourage your flock to be intimate with God it will reduce significantly your counselling requirements.

- The Father is the father of all regenerate. We can say "our father" because we have a relationship which has been established through the Son.

We are the blood bought children of God. Titus 3:1-7 - We are heirs to eternal life. In verses 5-8 we have the three persons of the Godhead - the Holy Spirit - v 5, the Lord Jesus Christ - v 6 and the Father in v 8. Not by anything we have done but we have become heirs of the grace of God. We have therefore the fatherhood of God and the sonship of the saints.

Before salvation we were sold unto sin, we were not sons. Spiritually we were dead other than creatures to our creator - Ephesians 2:19, Romans 7:14

Before salvation we were all of different races, none of us could call each other brother. We now only have a relationship through the Father only with those who are related to our Lord Jesus Christ.

Salvation alone makes us children of God rather than slaves to sin.

Only God can make us His children as only God has the power. John 3 - we are born from above.

Unbelievers cannot or will not see this unique relationship. As sons of rebellion the believe the lies of their father - Satan - who promotes the concept of the universal fatherhood of God. This is the concept which is putting most of the people on this earth into the Lake of Fire. John 8:44

The believer's sonship guarantees heirship, eternal life and fellowship with God forever. 1 John 3:2-3, Romans 8:16-18

The Holy Spirit is the down payment on believer's inheritance, the assurance that they are the sons of God. Ephesians 1:14

Believers are heirs of salvation and eternal life in Christ Jesus. We have the assurance of receiving a resurrection body.

The source of our confidence of receiving a resurrection body is based on the Lord's resurrection, a lively hope. We can depend on Him forever. We can trust the Father because we have a relationship with the Son

John 8:30 - 55 - These people thought that their inheritance through Abraham made them acceptable to God. As Jews they were in a special relationship but they were not saved. They had pride in their life. You are living in a state of sin in the house of Israel as a servant which means you are not a permanent resident as you are a servant rather than a son. He tells them they are of their father the devil - v 44.

The Jews also called Jesus illegitimate believing him to be the offspring of Mary and a Roman soldier.

They say they are related to God through Abraham. God however does not have grandchildren he has sons. It does not matter who your father was you need a personal relationship with God. He points out that they do not hear them because they are not of God. They were children of the devil because they were in rebellion. Whose son are you?. You choose your father and what family you are in eternally. If you turn down God's grace you choose the lake of fire, the worst of choices.
When dealing with the Gentile you should start with the father of creation and give them the gospel as Paul did on Mars hill. With the Jews however you start with God founding the nation Israel and then proceed to the gospel saying you have to know Him as your own personal father.

**DOCTRINES**

**SHEKINAH GLORY**

1. The Shekinah glory is the visible manifestation of the presence of God. The usual title used is the glory of God. It is from the Hebrew word "shachan" meaning dwelling.
2. It took the form of light, fire, cloud or a combination of these.
3. At times it is associated with the following, the Angel of Jehovah, the Holy Spirit, The Cherubim and the motif of thick darkness.
4. Appearances of the Shekinah Glory in the Old Testament
   a) The Garden of Eden [Genesis 3:8]
   b) The time of the Abrahamic Covenant [Genesis 15:12-18]
   c) The burning bush [Exodus 3:1-5]
   d) At the Exodus [Exodus 13:21, 22]
   e) At Mount Sinai [Exodus 19:16-20]
   f) The special manifestation to Moses [Exodus 33:17-23]
   g) The Tabernacle and the Ark of the Covenant [Exodus 29:42-46]
   j) The period of Joshua and the Judges [1 Samuel 4:21-22]
   k) Solomon's Temple [1 Kings 8:1-13, 2 Chronicles 5:2-7:3]
   m) The Shekinah glory was not in the second Temple Haggai 2:3, 9
   a) To the Shepherds Luke 2:8-9
   b) The Christmas star Matthew 2:1-12
   c) It comes in a new form John 1:1-14
   e) The reflection of that glory, 2 Corinthians 3:12-18
   g) The Revelation Revelation 1:12-16,
   h) In the Tribulation Revelation 15:8

**FATHERHOOD OF GOD** – see page 30 of the Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**SECTION C - CHRISTOLOGY - THE STUDY OF CHRIST**

**LESSON 12 - DEITY OF CHRIST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I am Christ – Deity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTRODUCTION**

As we look at our first text in Luke chapter 24 verses 36 through 53, we enter a subject area that caused great debate in the early church. We come face to face with our limits as human beings, for we cannot ever, this side of eternity understand how the Lord can be both man and God. The reason this is such a hard thing is that it only has happened once and will never happen again; only the Lord has this "hypostatic union".

In his resurrection body the disciples see him as he truly is; the Unique person of the universe, the God-Man. Standing before them in glorified body. Their response and ours is to be worship; they fell at his feet as though dead!
The early church councils in the fourth and fifth century tried to define this doctrine and they had great difficulty. Each time they thought they had it right a false view popped up and they had to try again and find a better Greek word to eliminate the false view (heresy). All the false views that exist in the early church exist today as cults. For example the Jehovah’s witnesses, and Mormons all hold views that the early church rejected. We will study these councils in Church History.

The Lords work now for us as our mediator at the right hand of the father depends on his being fully equal with both parties. His work as mediator depends on his hypostatic union. This word comes from two Greek words, meaning, "two standing under one essence". Thomas saw it in a moment in John 20:24-31, and we must have the same response as he did.

The Lord’s Titles

The Lord's titles prove that the disciples believed in this doctrine. He is called, the Son of God, Luke 22 : 70, and John 5:18, tells us that this meant to Jews equality with God the Father. He calls himself the first and the last, Rev 1:8, 17, and Isaiah 41:4 tells us that this means he is God. He is the Lord of All, 1 Corinthians 2:8. He is our great God, Romans 9:5.

His Attributes

He has the attributes of deity ascribed to him.

Eternal Life - John 1 : 1, Col 1 : 17, John 8 : 58, 17 : 5, 1 John 1 : 1.
Unchangeable - Hebrews 1 : 12, 13 : 8.
Creator - Hebrews 1 : 10, John 1 : 3, Colossians 1 : 16.
He Raises the dead - John 6 : 39, 44.
Justice - 2 Timothy 4 : 1.

He is therefore clearly pure deity but also pure humanity; he thirsted, hungered, was weary, slept, wept and cried out in pain, and died. Find the references to these things in your bible as you do this study.

How is it that the two natures of the Lord were combined? When we ask this we are face to face with the mystery of the universe, the mystery of the incarnation and the plan to provide our salvation.

DOCTRINES

HYPOSTATIC UNION - see page 41 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

I AM - see page 42 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

CHRIST: DEITY - see page 11 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 13 - THE INCARNATION OF THE LORD JESUS CHRIST.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 13 | Incarnation of Christ [91] | Hebrews 1:1-6  
Isaiah 9:6,7  
John 1:1-5, 14-18 | Virgin Birth  
Firstborn – Jesus as  
Christ – Testimonies re |

INTRODUCTION

Hebrews 1:1-6 shows the person and work of Christ as Messiah and Saviour of mankind. Christology is a most important subject. The message of Hebrews is that God has stepped into history with the Creator becoming a creature. It is quite clear that we are talking about the Lord Jesus Christ,
His victory at the Cross showed His superiority over everything including the angels. In the first six verses we have the summary of the subject. This passage is very profound. The most important thing is that God became man and dwelt amongst us.

Isaiah 9:6,7 looks forward to the incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ. Here it should be noted that the child is born and the Son is given. The humanity of Christ was born of Mary but the Son, the deity was given as the Son has always existed. Here we have the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus Christ brought together to form the hypostatic union. The full meaning of this is hidden from us even yet.

The preincarnate Christ means the appearances of the Lord before the incarnation, before He was born of the virgin Mary. Before you talk about the virgin birth you have to talk about the person who is being virgin born, the person who is God and man, and that He was God before he became man. The Lord Jesus Christ is unique in the history of the universe - Christ is unique - Emmanuel - God with us.

What was He doing before He was born? The doctrine of the person of Christ is crucial to the Christian faith. It is basic to soteriology [saviourhood] because if He was not what He claimed to be then His atonement was deficient and therefore not sufficient.

This is why an incorrect view of the Lord Jesus Christ will give an incorrect view of salvation, sanctification and eschatology. Because of the pre existence of Christ He was there to be given, before He was given, being eternally with the Father, He is God.

Because of His eternality He did not come into existence and was therefore not a created person. John 8:58 - there is no point in human history, there is no time in the future when He will not be able to say "I AM" because He is from eternity to eternity. If that is incorrect you have no Saviour.

Looking at the character of God He is eternal life, Christ is eternal life. What was the Lord doing before he was born as a member of humanity? He was the Creator - Hebrews 1, the Angel of Jehovah in the Old Testament. The person of Christ demands a virgin birth because God is becoming man and no human male can be involved in His birth because it is through the male that the Old Sin Nature comes.

THE BIRTH OF THE LORD JESUS CHRIST

The birth of the Lord Jesus Christ in Bethlehem "house of bread" in Judea probably in the autumn. The date of the birth of our Lord has been placed variously from 1 to 7 BC. Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem when Cyrenius was Governor of Syria and Herod was king in Jerusalem. - Luke 2:2

Justin Martyr also stated this referring to taxation records which were still in existence in his time to confirm that Joseph and Mary were resident in Nazareth and went to Bethlehem for the census [Apol.i. 34,46]

Until the middle of the 19th century the only historical reference to Cyrenius as the Greeks called him or as he was known by the Romans P.Sulpicius Quirinus was to a period some 10 years after the death of Herod which caused the school of higher criticism to try and discredit the account in Luke.

However the German Dr Zumpt proved that Cyrenius was twice the Governor of the province and that his first period dated from BC 4 when he succeeded Quinctilius Varus. Josephus tells us that Herod died in the 37th year of his reign. It is known that Herod was made king by the Romans in 40 BC during the consulsiphip of Domitus Calvinus and Asinius Pollio thus his death was either in 4 or 3 BC.

Josephus also states that on the night that Herod ordered the execution of his sons, who he believed were plotting to overthrow him, there was an eclipse of the moon. It is also known that Herod died within days of their execution. Johnson in his "Eclipses Past and Future" states that there was a lunar eclipse observable at Jerusalem with a maximum effect at 2:34 am on 13th March BC 4 with the next one visible in that city being a full eclipse at 12:15 am on the 9th January BC 1. It is therefore seen that the year of Herod's death was 4 BC.

Josephus also tells that Archelaus remained for 7 days in seclusion after the death of Herod, and that whilst he was well received initially he had to call in the guard prior to his going to Jerusalem on 8th Nisan to celebrate Passover. It is therefore concluded that Herod died in the last two weeks of March 4 BC.

The Greek word for young child which described our Lord at the time of Herod's search for him indicates a child less than 18 months old but not a baby.

It is clear from scriptural evidence that Jesus Christ was born in September / October and it would appear likely that this was either in the year 5 or 6 BC.

The Lord Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem of Judea to the Virgin Mary and the Holy Spirit. - Luke 2:7

Joseph demonstrated to be the legal though not natural father. -Matthew 1:16-20
Visit of the Wise Men from Babylon seeking the child born to be king whose star they had seen in the east. Herod sees this as a threat to his dynasty and asks the Wise Men to report back to him once they have located the Christ child so that he may eliminate the threat, but being divinely guided they escape by another route. - Matthew 2:1-12

Herod kills all the small boys two years old and under in an attempt to eliminate the legitimate King of the Jews but Joseph, Mary and the young Jesus travel to Egypt until Herod is dead. - Matthew 2:13-18

Herod the Great dies in the spring. Just prior to dying due to paranoia he kills some of his sons thereby removing the immediate threat to Jesus from the Herodian line.

ARCHELAUS, ethnarch of Judea, Samaria and Idumea until 6AD. During his reign of ten years he made many enemies and exercised great cruelty towards both Samaritans and Jews alike putting to death according to Josephus 3000 Jews in the Temple not long after his accession. In 6 AD as a result of complaints to the Emperor from his brothers and subjects he was banished to the far regions of the Roman Empire and his kingdom became a Roman province. - Matthew 2:22

As teachers we are responsible for the teaching ministry of the Church. By being a pastor you have an axe put at your neck by the Lord. The Lord's judgement is harsher on the unfaithful pastor than on others. We are to teach the full doctrine of the unique person of the Lord Jesus Christ to our people, so they know the truth about him as their Saviour and Lord

Isaiah 41 - gives the meaning of the Lord Jesus Christ. John 1:14 shows that God became flesh and dwelt amongst us. He has not left us in the dark about who he is. The result of accurate preaching about the incarnation will be worship in the lives of the hearers. True theology will cause you to end with you on your knees, false theology will have people arguing with each other and this is also the division between good and bad Bible teaching.

THE PURPOSE OF THE INCARNATION

God became flesh to reveal Himself to us, to provide an effective sacrifice for sin, to fulfil the Davidic covenant, to destroy the works of the Devil, to be a sympathetic High Priest for mankind and have the right to judge. They all focus on the purpose of the Lord's coming. This is a central point of the Christian faith not just the "Christmas" message. What was predicted by Isaiah came to pass.

There are over 300 prophecies in the Old Testament regarding the incarnation of Christ.

Some points to note

[a] The humanity of Christ was purposed from before the foundation of the world - Ephesians 1:4-7, 3:11, Revelation 13:8.
[b] Every type and prophecy of the Old Testament concerning Christ was in anticipation of the Incarnate Son of God.
[c] The fact of the humanity of Christ is seen in His annunciation and birth. - Luke 1:31-35
[d] His life here on earth revealed His humanity.
[e] The humanity of Christ is seen in His death and resurrection.
[f] The fact of the humanity of Christ is seen in that He ascended into heaven and is now, in His human glorified body, ministering for His own.
[g] When He comes again it will be "the same Jesus" coming as He went, in the same body though glorified in which He became incarnate.

In His incarnation He becomes head of the Church.

JOHN'S GOSPEL AND THE SAVIOUR

Seven passages in John's gospel bring this together and provides the key to that gospel.

The main purpose was that He came to die for your sins.

John 1:29 - behold the lamb of God that taketh away the sins of the world;
John 3:14,15 - the person who came to hang on the tree;
John 6:51 - the living bread which came down from heaven that will give eternal life to those who eat it.
John 10:11 - the good shepherd that gives His life for the sheep
John 11:49-52 - the person to die for the nation
John 12:24 - The corn of wheat that dies so that it may bear much fruit.
John 15:13-14 - the example that 'greater love hath no man than he who will lay down his life for his friends'.

You cannot get around it the Lord came to die. The cross is central.

He had to become human to be King, Priest, Mediator and Saviour.
DOCTRINES

VIRGIN BIRTH OF CHRIST - see page 75 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

CHRIST THE FIRSTBORN

1. He is the firstborn of all Creation - Colossians 1:15, John 1:18, 1 John 4:12
2. He is called the firstborn of Mary. As such he is the elder of the household and as He is descended from David through both of His genealogies he inherits the kingdom of David. Through Mary He has his title as Messiah - Matthew 1:25, Luke 2:7
3. The Lord is the firstborn of the Royal Family of God - Romans 8:29
4. He is the firstborn in resurrection. He is the first to be raised from the dead - Colossians 1:18, Hebrews 1:5,6
5. He is the first fruits of resurrection. - 1 Corinthians 15:20-23
6. The church is called the assembly of the firstborn. - Hebrews 12:23

CHRIST: TESTIMONIES ABOUT JESUS CHRIST - see page 13 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

STATEMENTS HE MAKES ABOUT HIMSELF IN THE BOOK OF REVELATION

1. "I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last" - Jesus Christ knows all things (1:11)
2. "I am the first and the last" - He is eternal (1:17)
3. "I am he that liveth and was dead; and, behold, I am alive forever more, Amen; and have the keys of hell and death " - He became the God - man and died for us conquering death and saving us from an eternity in hell (1:18)
4. "These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks." - He has the ministers of the church in his hand and is present in the churches. (2:1)
5. "These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive." - He combines eternality with his sacrificial death. (2:8)
6. "These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges." - He is and has the Word of God. (2:12)
7. "These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass" - He is not only Saviour but is also Judge. (2:18)
8. "These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars." - He gave the church the Holy Spirit so that the church can function (3:1)
9. "These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth and no man openeth." - He is holy true and has authority. He also gives opportunities to enable us to serve. (3:7)
10. "These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God"; - He has the final authority and is the revelation of God and the source of God's creation. (3:14)
11. "Behold I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me." - He calls to man but does not coerce the freewill of man. (3:20)

LESSON 14 - JESUS CHRIST - HIS MINISTRY AND CHARACTER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

Sometimes the work of Christ is considered under the three offices that He held, that of Prophet Priest and King. A connection can be made between the Messiah or Anointed One and the fact that prophets, priests and kings were all anointed

In John 7:everyone knew that when they had seen the Lord Jesus Christ they had seen something very unusual. This is indicated by the frequent use of the words amazed and marveled in the New Testament. They knew they were listening to far more than a man - John 7:37-39.

Because of His presence the authorities could not arrest Him. He claimed to be more than just a man, people said is he that prophet referring to Deuteronomy 18 or is he the Christ. Jesus Christ caused a division. They had to make a decision regarding Him and they still do. What think ye of Christ? This is the central question for all humanity. People who do not want the truth will not recognise it even when they are confronted with it.
PROPHET

In Deuteronomy 18:15 -19 the thing that made them think that this was the prophet spoken of in verse 18 was the authoritative way the Lord spoke to them. He did not say as the teachers of those days said that Rabbi A had said this whilst Rabbi B said that.

He was a prophet, He spoke God's words. He was more than a prophet however. We however are a little bit hard on those who lived at the time of Christ as we now have the benefit of the whole New Testament.

He gave the prophecies, he gave great illustrations, he made use of questions and turned the questions into a prophetic utterance. He was authoritative and he did it in a non systematic way taking opportunities as they arose.

The prophet was both a foreteller and a forth teller. This latter feature is a main function of the pastor who applies factors from the Bible to the present day in preaching.

There were three important discourses that were a part of his prophetic ministry,

[a] The Sermon on the Mount - Matthew 5-7,
[b] The Olivet discourse - Matthew 24-25
[c] The Upper Room discourse - John 13-16.

The attitudes of people to these passages will divide theological schools up into good and bad fairly quickly. If you ask them where the Sermon on the Mount fits you will find that in the Liberal, Reformed and Fundamentalist camps views vary significantly.

[a] The liberals take this passage as the Christian way of life, if you keep the sermon on the Mount you can satisfy God.

[b] In contrast the Reformed view is that the Sermon on the Mount is a policy which we are to bring into being by our own activities now and hasten the bringing about of Christ's kingdom on the earth.

[c] The fundamentalist viewpoint is that it is preached in relation to the kingdom. This discourse therefore seems mainly to emphasise getting ready for the kingdom. Some of the requirements to be practiced totally would necessitate the establishment of the kingdom with its righteous government temple worship system and practises, all though the principles may be followed at any time.

The sermon is a call to repentance for those who had refused to apply the scriptures to their thoughts and behaviour, and thereby left out the inner changes from the requirements for establishing the kingdom. Therefore it has relevance for any time when the kingdom is imminent such as during the Lord's ministry and in the Tribulation. It also pictures the conditions that will occur in the kingdom. It is also profitable for disciples in any age since it is one of the most detailed ethical codes in the Bible. It emphasizes the important truth that the heart and mind and body must be pure to serve the Lord.

The Olivet Discourse gives a prophetic introduction as to what will be happening on the earth during the Great Tribulation before the Kingdom whilst the Upper Room discourse gives the rules and the standards for the Church Age. One applies to the Church, one to the Tribulation and one to the Millennium. However all Scripture is for all of us to gain from with the principles of all the discourses having application to all ages.

In different ages however the emphasis or importance of a passage will vary. There are certain elements that are required to fulfill the sermon on the Mount which we do not have today. There needs to be accurate teaching in this area as there are many devotional books which do not teach accurately on this especially in the area in the Sermon on the Mount. For example, the Sermon on the Mount is not the primary passage of Christianity, the Upper Room discourse is.

PRIEST

Jesus Christ as Priest - He has a twofold priesthood, one after Aaron as He has a redemptive function but he is also a priest after the order of Melchizedec of Genesis 14

The prophet spoke to men from God; the priest speaks to God for men. Being of the tribe of Judah disqualified Christ from being an Aaronic priest; therefore, God arranged ahead of His coming for another order of priests, the order of Melchizedec, and Christ is a priest of that order with respect to His person and His work. Yet there are similarities between Aaronic priests and Christ as Priest both in His person and His work.

Levitical Priests
These priests had to be men chosen by God and qualified for His work (Heb. 5:1-7). Our Lord was chosen, incarnate, and tested thus being qualified in His person to be a ministering Priest.

These priests served by representing the people to God and especially in the offering of sacrifices. Their sacrifices were many, repeated, and not in themselves of eternal worth. The writer to the Hebrews makes it clear that had they been able to effect eternal satisfaction for sin there would have been no need for their repetition year after year.

In contrast, our Lord's sacrifice of Himself for our sins was a single sacrifice, once for all, and for all mankind. In this, His great work of redemption, He did a work which was foreshadowed by the work of the Aaronic priests, even though He was not a priest after the order of Aaron.

Melchizedec Priest

Features of the Melchizedec priesthood include

(a) It was a royal priesthood. Melchizedec was a king as well as a priest. The uniting of these two functions was unknown among Aaronic priests, though predicted of Christ in Zechariah 6:13.
(b) It was unrelated to ancestry. "Without father, without mother" does not mean that Melchizedec did not have parents, nor that he was not born or did not die, but only that the Scriptures contain no record of these events so that he might be more perfectly likened to Christ. Aaronic priests depended on their ancestry to qualify.
(c) It was timeless, having no recorded beginning or ending so Melchizedec might again be more like the Lord who is a Priest forever after the order of Melchizedec.
(d) It was superior to the Aaronic order. Abraham, out of whom came the Aaronic order, acknowledged the superiority of Melchizedec when he gave tithes of the spoils of the war to him (Gen. 14:20). Levi, though unborn, and all the priests that came from him were involved in this act which demonstrated the superiority of Melchizedec.

KING

The Lord Jesus Christ is also King. He is the King of Kings and Lord of Lords as well as being the legal king of Israel as the son of David. He is what could be classified in the ancient world as battlefield royalty. When Napoleon conquered an area he would often make one of his generals a king. The Lord becomes King of Kings and Lord of Lords because of his victory on the Cross. He was born a son of David and therefore royalty according to birth. He is king for ever and over all.

The fact that He is the King of Israel guarantees that He will return to set up His kingdom and rule over Israel fulfilling the Davidic and Palestinian Covenants. It also guarantees that the world will not self destruct due to such things as worldwide nuclear war or a giant asteroid striking the earth

KENOSIS

The first problem for the theologian as they approach Jesus Christ as prophet, priest, king and Saviour is that of kenosis. This Greek word comes from Philippians 2:7 where He became of no reputation and took on the form of a servant and was made in the likeness of man. He emptied himself.

Theologians ask what he emptied himself from? Was he still full deity or did He empty himself of some of the attributes when He became man? If He did not have all the attributes of deity He was not fully God. He is however both fully God and fully man. Kenosis states that He did not lose any of the attributes of deity but withheld the operation of those attributes. The false concept of kenosis is that Christ gave up being God, He gave up His omniscience. This concept is attractive because it states He grew in knowledge and wisdom in His humanity He had to learn but did He have to learn in His deity? The answer of course is no.

Did he give up His deity? The answer again is no! On one occasion people saw His deity this was at the time of His arrest in Gethsemane. For a brief time he pulled the veil back and His deity caused the large army contingent to fall backwards. The veil was controlled by His will John 18:6.

Secondly the Lord did not call upon the deity that He had. When He was on the Cross He could have come down from the Cross at any time and called legions of angels to rout His enemies. With an ability to say no it brings out the wonder of the love of the Lord Jesus Christ dying for us.

Thirdly as the great God He humbled himself that we might through Him be lifted up to glory as shown in Philippians 2:7-11. It wasn't the nails that held the Lord to the Cross it was His obedience to the plan of God.

THE LORD AND SIN
The second theological problem is whether the Lord sinned or not or whether He was capable of sinning. Could He be tempted? If Christ was temptable and there was a possibility that He could sin He would not be perfect say some theologians.

If the Lord is not sinless He is not a sacrifice. The sinlessness of Christ is absolutely vital as without it you have not got an effective sacrifice. The liberals say that Christ sinned and do not believe He died for their sins. The liberal does not want a Saviour but a nice person in the sky who will let everyone off eventually. They want a great example not a Lord whom you have to obey. This is not the picture of the Lord that the Bible gives us.

As conservatives we are conserving the Biblical truth, the sinlessness of Christ, the perfection of His character and His work on the Cross, the fact that we have a Saviour and a Lord, the Lord who will be the judge of the world. All conservatives agree that Christ is sinless.

If you are to teach impeccability it is something that needs to be prepared well in advance as it is a complex area of doctrine. The Lord was tempted, not to show that He could sin but to prove for all eternity that He could not sin. The testing of the Lord was real like ours but the testing proved His perfect character. He was tested in every way as we are yet without sin. He is therefore the one who we can depend on when we meet our tests. He could not fail and He did not fail and therefore we can have total confidence in the everlasting arms. He has grace and power to help us in times of need. He has proved to be able to help us in any circumstances.

**DOCTRINES**

**LIFE OF CHRIST**

1. The life of Jesus Christ can be divided into seven separate sections:-
   a) The Virgin Birth.
   b) The Lord’s Ministry.
   c) His Death.
   d) Burial.
   e) Resurrection.
   f) Ascension.
   g) Session.

2. The Virgin Birth. There are three reasons why Jesus had to be born of a virgin:-
   a) To fulfill prophecy (Isaiah 7:14)
   b) To fulfill the ‘curse of Coniah’ (Jeremiah 22:30) (also known as Jeconiah and Jehoiachin)
   i) (Matthew 1:16) Joseph the legal but not real father of Jesus was descended from David through Solomon ... (Matthew 1:6) and Coniah (Matthew 1:11)
   ii) Mary the real mother (Luke 3:23) of the humanity of the Lord Jesus Christ was descended from David. (Luke 3:31) through Nathan.
   iii) In (2 Samuel 7:16) David is promised a son who will reign forever i.e. The Lord Jesus Christ.
   iv) In (Jeremiah 22:28-30) Coniah is told that no descendant of his will reign over Israel.
   v) By the Virgin birth a son, Jesus Christ, can reign forever over Israel (He has eternal life) being descended from David via Nathan.
   c) To ensure Jesus was born without the imputation of Adam’s sin (1 Timothy 2:14,15)
   i) In (1 Timothy 2) we see that the woman was deceived but the man deliberately sinned. Thus the sinful nature comes from the man.
   ii) In order to be our redeemer Jesus had to be born without a sin nature so that he can purchase those who have a sin nature.
   iii) By the Virgin Birth Jesus was born without the imputation of Adam’s sin.

3. The Lord’s Ministry.
   a) Reasons for his HUMANITY
      i) Saviourhood (Philippians 2:5-8)
      ii) Mediatorship (1 Timothy 2:5-6)
      iii) Priesthood (Hebrews 10:10-14)
      iv) Kingship (Psalm 89:29)
   b) What was his means of operation.
      i) Power-the Holy Spirit (John 3:34)
      ii) He was tempted (Matthew 4:1-11)
      iii) He had free will (Matthew 26:39)
      iv) Was perfect (2 Corinthians 5:21

4. His Trials and Death.
   a) Trials
      i) Annas (John 18:12,13)
      ii) Caiaphas (Matthew 26:57)
      iii) Sanhedrin (Luke 22:66)
   b) Crucifixion:-
      i) Jesus was crucified at 9 am. (Mark 15:25)
      ii) Darkness covered the earth 12 noon (Mark 15:33)
      iii) Jesus bore the sins 12:3 pm (Matthew 27:46)
      iv) “My God My God” Psalm 22 (Romans 6:23)
      v) Salvation is completed 3 pm (Luke 23:44-46, John 19:30) “Father into thy bands I dismiss my spirit”.
      vi) Prophetic (Isaiah 53:9)

5. Burial and In the Grave.
After the death of the Lord Jesus Christ several things happened:

a) Signs
   i) Temple veil rent from top (God) to bottom (man) (Matthew 27:51)
   ii) A great earthquake (Matthew 27:51)
   iii) Graves opened. (Matthew 27:52, 53)
   v) Side pierced (John 19:34, Zechariah 12:10)

b) Burial
   ii) Both rich men. (John 19:38-42)
   iii) Laid in a rich man's tomb. (Isaiah 53:9, John 19:41)
   iv) Guard on the tomb. (Matthew 27:62-66)
   c) Jesus had three separate parts - Body, Soul, Spirit.
   d) At burial -
      i) Body - in the tomb (Matthew 27:57-60)
      ii) Spirit - to the Father in Heaven (Luke 23:46)
      iii) Soul - Paradise or Abraham's Bosom (Luke 23:43)
   iv) In Paradise Jesus met the soul of the penitent thief and preached to the fallen angels in Tartarus. (1 Peter 3:19, 20a, 2 Peter 2:4, Genesis 6:4)

6. Resurrection.
   a) Jesus died on the Passover - the Paschal lamb.
   b) Jesus rose on the Feast of the First Fruits. After 3 days the soul came from Hades (Luke 23:43) the Spirit from the Father (Luke 23:46) and joined the body in the tomb. With the help of the Holy Spirit the Lord Jesus Christ received a resurrection body. (Romans 8:11)
   c) Jesus predicted his resurrection (John 2:18-22)
   d) He is the first fruits (1 Corinthians 15:22, 23)
   e) In the period between the resurrection and the ascension many people saw the risen Lord. The bribery of the Roman soldiers (Matthew 28:11-15) is additional proof of the resurrection as are the changed lives of the disciples.

7. Ascension.
   a) Having risen the Lord ascended (Luke 24:50-53) to be able to take His place of honour at the right hand of God.
   b) With the ascension paradise emptied, the Old Testament saints being transferred to Heaven.
   c) In the "Church" age believers go to be with the Lord. (2 Corinthians 5:7-9)

8. Session - the seating of Christ at God's right hand.
   a) Reaching the Father in heaven Christ sat at God's right hand. (Colossians 3:1)
   b) The session is in order that the Father may make His enemies His footstool. (Hebrews 1:13)
   c) Prophecy of the session. (Psalm 110:1)
   d) The footstool will be completed initially at the Second Advent with the final judgment occurring at the Last Judgment. (Revelation 20:11-15)

KENOSIS OF CHRIST

1. Kenosis is an expression which means to "empty oneself" or "to make himself of no reputation." 2. Principle of Kenosis:- (Philippians 2:5-8)
2. Jesus Christ from eternity past always has been God. As such he is all knowing, he is all powerful, has everlasting life and many other absolute qualities. He was not created because he is eternal.
3. During his earthly ministry, rather than using his own absolute power he used the power of the Holy Spirit.
   a) Having risen the Lord ascended (Luke 24:50-53) to be able to take His place of honour at the right hand of God.
   b) With the ascension paradise emptied, the Old Testament saints being transferred to Heaven.
   c) In the "Church" age believers go to be with the Lord. (2 Corinthians 5:7-9)
   d) Reaching the Father in heaven Christ sat at God's right hand. (Colossians 3:1)
   e) The session is in order that the Father may make His enemies His footstool. (Hebrews 1:13)
   f) Prophecy of the session. (Psalm 110:1)
   g) The footstool will be completed initially at the Second Advent with the final judgment occurring at the Last Judgment. (Revelation 20:11-15)

BLOOD SACRIFICE see page 10 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

CHRIST: PROPHET, PRIEST AND KING - see page 12 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 15 - CHRIST'S SUBSTITUTIONARY DEATH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>His Substitutionary Death [111]</td>
<td>Ephesians 2:1-10</td>
<td>Unlimited Atonement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Leviticus 16:20-22</td>
<td>The Cross and Satan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>John 3:16-21</td>
<td>Crucified with Christ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SALVATION

Salvation is the greatest theme in the Bible and centres on the Lord Jesus Christ. It involves bringing people from condemnation to justification, death to eternal life and from being an enemy to being a friend. This is extremely important area to get right as it is here that the cults attempt to attack the Christian faith.
Ephesians 2:1-9 - “but God” in verse 4 is a great contrast to where we were in the fact that we were spiritually dead. By the grace of the Lord the Lord found us while we were spiritually dead and brought us to newness of life. His purpose was to lift us up to sit in heavenly places with Christ Jesus v 6 that we should walk in him.

WHY DID HE DO IT?

[a] To show His love - John 3:16, Romans 5:8
[b] To show his grace in eternity Ephesians 2:7,
[c] That we should represent God on earth - Ephesians 2:10

When God found us we were a dead branch on a dead tree, the tree of sin but God found us and brought us new life. Salvation is in three tenses, past - in the past we were saved, at present we are being saved from sin and evil some of which we are oblivious to and in the future we are saved forever and will be delivered from this body of death.

WE ARE SAVED FROM

[a] The condemnation of sin Ephesians 2:8, Titus 3:5,
[b] Dominion of sin in the Christian life Hebrews 7:25,
[c] The presence of sin in heaven Romans 5:9-10

ATONEMENT

The Day of Atonement is the holiest day in Israel - Yom Kippur - it is the day of the substitutionary atonement which speaks of the day when the Lord became our substitute on the Cross. 1 John 2:2 The atonement has its roots very deep in Old Testament ritual. Leviticus 16: 20-22 - he becomes the scape goat, the person who is blamed even though he is not guilty and takes the consequence of the sins.

The procedure was that the hands are placed on the head indicating transference or delegation. Here the sinner is transferring symbolically his sins to the animal. In this specific case Aaron is placing the sins of the whole people on the goat and that goat is sent out into the wilderness to be set apart to die in the wilderness. The guilty parties should die for their own sins but they have a substitute.

The Lord Jesus Christ was not only a substitute but also a perfect substitute. He was an efficacious substitute which means that what He did worked perfectly. The Lord's sacrifice was perfect and solved sin for all men. To atone is to completely blot out the consequences.

The substitutionary sacrifice - did he die for the sins of all mankind or only for the elect. This is the difference between the evangelical and the hard Calvinist. This is an area between conservative Christians.

The death of Christ represents on His part as an act of obedience to the law which the sinners have broken as a propitiation, satisfying God's righteous demands on the sinner. It is important that the people understand in depth the death of Christ on the Cross. You should teach them the large words but give an explanation for each.

The death of Christ removed all moral hindrances to the mind of God to the saving of sinners seeing that the penalty of sin has been paid through the blood of Christ. God has been propitiated and man has been reconciled, the barrier is down.

LIBERAL FALLACIES INVOLVING THE DEATH OF CHRIST

[a] The substitutionary death is immoral and God could not be righteous and still lay the sins of a guilty person on an innocent one. From the Old Testament however we see that God has constantly done this and that it is a means of teaching grace. God's love is pure and He has concern and cares for you.

[b] That Christ died as a martyr but it was not efficacious so that it did not solve sin but it is a good example of how man can die. He died as an example to us.

[c] Another fallacy is that he died to reject evil even if it costs your life. This is what a lot of the theological institutions teach. When they talk about the importance of the cross this is what they mean.

[d] The liberals do not believe in the physical resurrection. What they believe is that there is a spiritual presence in our life if we believe what he believed and that He died as an example rather than a sacrifice. They use familiar language but they do not mean what we do. It is therefore critical to discern what is going on so that you can smell the wolf in sheep's clothing.

The word Vicar is the Latin for substitute from which we get the word vicarious. The Lord Jesus Christ is a true vicar as he stands between God and man.
BEFORE AND AFTER THE CROSS

The cross is the watershed in history, it divides history into two areas. The payment in full of sin is shown by the release of those in Paradise to heaven by the Lord Jesus Christ.

Prior to the Cross it was quite appropriate to pray as the tax collector did “God be merciful to me a sinner - Luke 18:13.

Prior to the Cross there was no completed provision made under the law for sin so this person could not rely on a finished sacrifice to the sin as this only occurred at the Cross. Since the cross there has been no need to ask God to be satisfied. He is satisfied eternally by the death of Christ. Receive the Saviour who received the wrath of God.

The Cross shows that God has been merciful to us. Mercy is no longer needed because grace has already been provided. You can now bow before Him and thank Him for the blood of Christ which cleanses us from all sin. The door has been opened as the book of Hebrews says through the veil which is His flesh. You need to be precise in what you are praying. You are post Cross and not in the Old Testament. This puts us in a different position to the Old Testament and this is focussed on by the epistles and letters.

What was prayed for prior to the cross does not need to be prayed for after the cross because it has been done. You name your sin to the Lord rather than begging for forgiveness. Our guide is 1 John 1:9. We have to be obedient and name our sin and recognise that it is an affront to the righteousness of God. Many of the prayers that are offered today are an affront to God as it is not in conformity with His Word.

DOCTRINES

ATONEMENT: UNLIMITED ATONEMENT - see page 5 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

THE CROSS AND SATAN - see page 22 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

CRUCIFIED WITH CHRIST

1. SCRIPTURE (Galatians 2:20) "I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave Himself for me. "

2. Evaluation or Literal Translation
   a) "I am crucified with Christ". I have been crucified with Christ in the past with a result that I keep on being crucified with Christ forever (identification with Christ in His death). Passive voice - I have received this crucifixion (this occurs at the point of salvation). We are dead to the law after crucifixion with Christ because Christ fulfilled the law. (Matt. 5:17). We are overcomers (1 John 5:4,5) b) "yet not I" - I no longer live - my old life of sin and self has died c) "but Christ lives in me" - Christ keeps on living in me. (Gal. 4:19). Christ lives in us for fellowship as well - (Rev. 3:20, John 14:20, 2 Cor. 13:5, Rom. 8:10, Col. 1:27) d) "and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith (or power) of the Son of God who loved me and gave himself for me." 3. The only way to fulfill the law is through the character of Christ formed in the believer through the ministry of the Holy Spirit (Rom. 8:2-4). In our own strength we are unable to keep the law because we have a sinful nature.

LESSON 16 - RESURRECTION OF CHRIST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 16 | His Resurrection [115] | 1 Cor 15:12-23  
John 5:28,29  
Rev 20:4-6, 11-15  
1 Cor 15:23-26  
1 Cor 15:3-8  
Job 19:25-27 | Mediatorship  
Resurrection  
Immortality |

INTRODUCTION

This is the central of the Christian faith and a major part of the gospel message. If there is no bodily resurrection there is no Christianity. The liberals attack the doctrine of the bodily resurrection vigorously.

Most of the denominations nowadays do not hold to the bodily resurrection and therefore exclude themselves from the name Christian. If you deny the physical resurrection you deny the critical doctrine of the Christian faith.

RESURRECTION
In 1 Corinthians 15:12-23 Paul shows that there is a resurrection for both the saved and unsaved, some to everlasting bliss and some to the eternal Lake of Fire. In John 5:28-29 it is stated that all are not going to be raised to glory. This gives a resurrection to both the saved and the lost whilst 1 Corinthians gives the mechanics of the resurrection.

Revelation 20:4-6 gives the first resurrection whilst Revelation 20:11-15 shows the Last Judgement or the second resurrection.

In 1 Corinthians 15:23 it is shown that the resurrection is in their own order with the firstfruits being the Lord Jesus Christ, this setting a pattern. The resurrection of Christ is not an isolated incident but an integral part of the plan of the Father as are the virgin birth, perfect life, substitutionary death and session of Christ.

In 1 Corinthians 15:23-26 it says each in their own order. The Greek word for order means battalion thus there is a battalion review as it were in view there. There are three battalions in the review, the first being the Lord Jesus Christ, the second are the saved whose destiny is eternal life with the Lord Jesus Christ whilst the third comprise unbelievers who will spend eternity in the Lake of Fire. The Lord's resurrection is critical for all this activity in the future.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE RESURRECTION

1. Without the resurrection it is impossible for Christ to be glorified. Jesus Christ has to have a human body for his glorification. The humanity of Christ is glorified higher than the angels. (John 7:39, John 16:14)
2. Resurrection indicates completion of justification. (Romans 4:25, 2 Corinthians 5:21)
3. Resurrection is a guarantee of ultimate sanctification. (1 Corinthians 15:20-23)
4. Without resurrection there is no priesthood. (Psalm 110:4, Hebrews 7:28, Hebrews 10:5, 10:10-14)
5. Without resurrection there is no fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant. (2 Samuel 7:8-16)
6. Without resurrection there is no mediatorship. (Job 9:33)
7. Historical proof of the resurrection:
   (a) An empty tomb. (Matthew 28)
   (b) The competency of the witnesses. Many of the witnesses died rather than change their testimony.
   (c) Subsequent changes to the disciples after the resurrection.
   (d) The day of Pentecost.
   (e) The observance of the first day of the week as the worship day over 19 centuries.
   (f) The historic existence of the church.

If the Lord is not raised we will not be raised and neither will the unbelievers. If the unbelievers are not raised there is no judgement, no lake of fire and therefore it does not matter what you believe in. Those who reject the resurrection reject the second coming and the Last Judgement. Most liberals who reject the resurrection reject almost everything else.

CONTRAST BETWEEN THOSE INVOLVED IN THE FIRST AND SECOND RESURRECTIONS

1. The first resurrection is to commendation The second resurrection is to condemnation.
2. The first involves witnesses of Jesus. [Revelation 20:4] The second involves those deceived by Satan. [Revelation 20:8]
3. The first are those that live. [Revelation 20:4] The second are the dead. [Revelation 20:12]
4. The first become priests and rulers with God and Christ. [Revelation 20:6] The second are tormented day and night. [Revelation 14:10,11]
5. The first are God's sons. [Revelation 21:7] The second there was found no place for them. [Revelation 20:11]
6. The first are not subject to the second death. [Revelation 20:6] The second are subject to the second death. [Revelation 20:14,15]
8. The first are happy and holy. [Revelation 20:6] The second have weeping and gnashing of teeth. [Matthew 25:30]

In 1 Corinthians 15 we have the creed of the early church. What Paul is saying is that Christ rose from the dead and that this doctrine combined with the substitutionary efficacious sacrifice are the foundations of the Christian life. The resurrection prove who the Lord Jesus Christ was, that He is the God-man the unique person of the universe. He was not a dead martyr or a ghost, He is the God-man who died and rose again from the dead. If there is no resurrection, there is no faith, no hope, no truth no eternal life. When you have no hope you have no gospel. John 14:6 is a hollow lie unless it is confirmed by the resurrection. Praise God he spoke the truth, we serve a living Saviour, not a dead hero!

He prophesied his own death and resurrection many times. If Christ did not rise you have proved that He was not what He claimed to be and you have not got a Saviour. You can claim that the Bible is trustworthy as you have the Scriptures saying that Christ is going to rise from the dead, He did rise and the early church believed He rose.

Some liberals believe that Christ rose from the dead spiritually in the disciples hearts on Easter Sunday morning. Where the liberal talks about the Easter faith that is probably what they mean. They believe that the disciples sat round after the crucifixion and said that Christ's statements were still important, that his concepts live on and that he has risen spiritually.

Rudolf Bultman who is a liberal said that everytime he preaches Jesus came alive which is not unlike an English teacher saying that every time he read Shakespeare he came alive. It intimates that Christ is still dead. If it takes a minister to bring Christ back to life every time he preaches on a Sunday, Christ is dead. Paul blows this liberal philosophy away in 1 Corinthians 15.

TWO CONCEPTS OF RESURRECTION

Very few people understand the ancient Jewish and Greek concepts of resurrection which were very different.

Greeks

[a] The Greeks believed that man was of two parts, the body and the soul - this is the belief called dualism. When the Greeks talked about resurrection they did not mean the resurrection of the body which was anathema to them. The sooner they could die and get rid of their bodies the better. The Greeks looked forward to being released from their bodies so that they might be just pure spirit. The concept of the after life for the Greeks was the spirit life or “shades”. The Europeans have carried this concept through and most people think that that is what the Bible teaches. It is not but this has been brought into Westernised Christianity.

Hebrews

[b] The Hebrews looked on man as being made up of three parts, soul, spirit and body and that you cannot split man up into parts that there was therefore a true unity. For the Hebrew mind to think about the resurrection it must involve the body for to the Hebrew mind man was a unified being, not able to be split up, except for discussion purposes. When Paul is talking about the resurrection he is talking about a bodily resurrection.

The Corinthians were Greeks and they did not believe in the resurrection. They were spiritualising the resurrection very much like the liberals of today because they did not want to have a physical resurrection. This was the Greek Platonic and Aristotelian concepts.

Paul says to the Corinthians that whether you like it or not Christ rose from the dead and whether you like it or not you will rise physically from the dead. In addition the unbeliever will go with a body into the lake of fire. You will have a body like Christ's resurrection body. If you have not got a physical resurrection you have not got a faith.

OLD TESTAMENT PASSAGES WHICH REFER TO THE RESURRECTION.

It was the expectation of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that they would be resurrected at the end. The concept of being buried with the family was that it would also involve choosing with whom you are going to be resurrected with. You chose your company which is still a tremendous concept to have.

The resurrection passages are the ones you read when you are burying a believer - 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18, 1 Corinthians 15, John 14:1-3, Philippians 3:21.

When the Lord calls the people at the Rapture all these people are going to be together. Job 19:25-27 gives a clear concept of bodily resurrection. Job is perhaps the most ancient of the books of the Bible going back to the time of the Patriachs. He says that he knows that his redeemer live and that he will see him in his flesh in the latter days upon the
earth. After death our bodies go back to the minerals which is no problem for the Lord. He can regather them and reorganise them in a new way.

When we look at the Lord's resurrection body we are looking at a picture of ours in the future. The structure of the Lord's body was such that it could walk through walls even though it was solid. People could recognise Christ who could eat, teach, breathe and be touched and had abilities which He did not have in His pre cross body.

God's plan for man was that he would live forever. Physical death came into existence due to sin. The last enemy that is destroyed is death. Man is going to live forever. The question is where are you going to spend eternity in heaven or in the Lake of Fire. In Creation man was created to live forever and he will. The gospel is why unbelievers spend eternity in the Lake of Fire. This is a living death where they wish they could die but cannot. The concept of a spiritual resurrection is not new but is a Satanic lie from the beginning. This is what you are facing all the way through from the Mormons to the Hare Krishnans.

The resurrection was one of the first doctrines to be attacked with the Greeks re interpreting resurrection in 52 AD. In the Talmud they also reject the concept of resurrection.

Evidence Of The Resurrection

The Bible records 17 appearances of the Lord Jesus Christ including one in which there were 500 witnesses most of whom had survived until the writing of 1 Corinthians. Paul is saying that if you do not believe my testimony get on a boat, go to Palestine and check it out with the hundreds of witnesses there. In those days no one doubted because the evidence was overwhelming. There is supporting evidence by unbelievers of that day such as Tacitus, Suetonius and Pliny who all wrote about the Christians who were always talking about the resurrection. Christos anastasis - Christ is risen.

THE CHURCH AND THE RESURRECTION

Every church in the ancient world was seen to be represented by Christ, the Cross and the resurrection. There was not a meeting that the resurrection was not mentioned. The early church was for the first twenty years mainly Jewish and they met with other Jews at Sabbath services and shared worship as long as they could, until they were expelled by their unbelieving fellow Jews. For their worship of the Lord however, they met before dawn on Sunday rather than Saturday. They, by later in the first century in Palestine, then met in homes or Christian synagogues on a Sunday rather than a Saturday, for which they were vigorously attacked in the Talmud [written between 70 and 90 AD].

Every church in the ancient world was seen to be represented by Christ, the Cross and the resurrection. There was not a meeting that the resurrection was not mentioned. They met on Sunday rather than Saturday for their worship with the early church being basically Jewish. They originally met at a synagogue but on a Sunday rather than a Saturday for which they were vigorously attacked in the Talmud [written between 70 and 90 AD].

They met on the resurrection day and at the service they would sing a resurrection hymn. The response of "He's risen - truly He's risen" was used at these services as it still is in the Orthodox churches today. Nowadays we do not stress the resurrection as we should. If you look through the preaching of the apostles what do they say in the market places Christ died for our sins and He rose again and stressed the resurrection even ahead of the Cross. This is why Satan attacks the resurrection as he has during the last 100 years or so with the churches emphasis not on it.

God who keeps the promise of the resurrection can obviously keep the promises in the Bible. Resurrection power is live power. We have the living Lord Jesus Christ in us. It is based on a physical, historical reality.

You need to stress the resurrection every week as where believers do not know their faith Satan will take what little they know away from them. As pastors we should get excited about what the Lord has done, will do and is doing and enthusiastic about teaching the Word. The Lord raised Himself, the Holy Spirit raised Him and God the Father raised Him from the dead. The Godhead broke the bands of death.

RESURRECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS

1. This resurrection takes place at the second advent.

2. The body of David was still in his tomb according to Peter on the day of Pentecost. (Acts 2:25-29) David's body could not have then been resurrected in the scene of Matthew 27:51, 52.

3. Under the concept of Daniel 1 2:1 3, Isaiah 26:19, 20 the resurrection of the Old Testament saints is related to the second advent of Jesus Christ.

4. The dispensation of Israel is not yet completed, the resurrection occurs at the end of a dispensation, the end of the dispensation of Israel - Second Advent. The Age of Gentiles ended with Abraham's call but the saints from that era did not get their resurrection bodies because Jesus Christ had not received his, the first fruits. (1 Corinthians 1 5:20)
5. The two witnesses of Revelation 11:3-13 are Moses and Elijah and they could not be killed if they had received resurrection bodies. (Revelation 11:7, 8). Moses and Elijah therefore have not received their resurrection bodies by the middle of the Tribulation. Matthew 27:52-53 is a transfer scene not a resurrection scene. The transfer is one of saints from paradise to the third heaven of Ephesians 4:8. Some were given resuscitated bodies to witness to the Jews.

6. The Abrahamic, Davidic, Palestinian and New Covenants are not fulfilled till the second advent of Christ. The resurrection of Israel corresponds to the fulfillment of these four unconditional covenants.

DOCTRINES

MEDIATORSHIP

1. Greek word is mesites which has as its root meaning, to have a neutral group/nation to stand between two warring nations to arbitrate and judge between them. The two concepts are judgement and peacemaking.
2. The mediator had to be equal to both parties and acceptable to each.
3. Old Testament usage of this concept is found in job 9:9, 32, 33. Job calls for an umpire between man and God.
4. The Hypostatic Union of the Lord Jesus Christ qualifies the Lord to be the mediator between man and God as he alone is equal with both parties. 1Timothy 2:5.
5. The Lord's work on the cross forms the basis of his mediatorialship as he removes the sin barrier between man and God. Hebrews 9:12-15.

RESURRECTION - see page 59 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

IMMORTALITY

1. Immortality means exemption from physical death and should not be confused with eternal life.
2. Immortality is used only with reference to the body (Rom 6:12; 8:11).
3. At this time only Jesus Christ has immortality as He alone has a resurrection body. (1 Tim 1:17; 6:16).
4. All men are currently mortal (Job 4:17; 1 Cor 15:22).
5. At the rapture, our mortal body will put on immortality. (1 Cor 15:51-54).
6. Death is then conquered and mortality is "swallowed up of life" (2 Cor 5:4).

LESSON 17 - THE ASCENSION OF JESUS CHRIST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

The ascension is something that is not stressed at all today apart from it being an introduction to Pentecost. It is however very important as it is the exaltation of the Lord Jesus Christ. This begins the Ministry which we are enjoying today and will continue to enjoy until He comes for us or we go to be with Him.

STATEMENTS ABOUT THE ASCENSION

In the Old Testament - Psalm 68:18 cf Ephesians 4:8, Psalm 110:1 cf Acts 2:34

In the sayings of Christ - John 7:33, 14:12, 28, 16:5 in going to his Father and John 6:62, 20:17 in His ascension


The Christian life is in three phases, salvation, the life on earth, the life in heaven.

The ministry of Christ falls into four areas, the preincarnate ministry, the ministry of the first advent, His present ministry and His millennial ministry.
In John 14:1-4 the Lord ties the Second Advent of the Lord to the need to go away. He says that as certain as He is going He will return after He has prepared a place for us. Later in the chapter He says that He will send us another comforter. John 14:16,17 At this point He foretells enormous changes coming in the lives of the disciples after He has gone. The Lord's departure and the coming of the Church are inter related. The doorway to blessing was opened at the ascension.

The ascension marked the end of the period of Christ's humiliation and His entrance into the state of exaltation. Even the forty days between His resurrection and ascension involved some limitation as with respect to showing His glory. Notice that his post resurrection appearances did not startle the disciples as far as the appearance of His resurrection body was concerned.

**ASCENSION**

1. The resurrection body of Christ was capable of 'space travel'. The humanity of Christ in resurrection travelled through all three heavens. (John 20:17). (1st Heaven - the atmosphere, 2nd Heaven - Stellar Space, 3rd Heaven - the Throne Room of God).

2. The purpose of this space travel was to arrive in a human body at the throne room of God the Father. Although covered with no protective space suit, the resurrection body did not burn up as it travelled through the universe, it did not suffer fatigue but arrived in perfect condition (Romans 8:34, Colossians 3:1, Hebrews 1:3, 8:1, 10:12, 12:2). Upon his arrival, the Father said "sit down at my right hand" (Psalm 110:1, Hebrews 1:13). Deity does not sit, only Christ's humanity sat down. This indicated the acceptability of the humanity of Christ (Ephesians 1:20) and guarantees the acceptability of regenerate mankind (Ephesians 2:6).

   The seating or session of Christ declared Him superior to all angels, elect or fallen (1 Peter 3:22). Today believers are positionally higher than angels but in the resurrection body believers will be physically superior to angels. This is why God gives every believer at least one angelic servant - to some many more - a down payment that we will be one day superior to them (Hebrews 1:14). Who made this possible? Jesus Christ through ascension and session.

3. The ascension and session of the humanity of Christ produced victory in the angelic conflict. (Hebrews 1:3-13).

4. The ascension begins a new stage of the angelic conflict (Ephesians 1:20-22), 4:7-10). Hence the believer of the Church age is involved in the intensification of the angelic conflict.


6. The second advent of Christ will conclude the subjection process (Daniel 7:13, 14, Zechariah 13:2, Colossians 2:15, Revelation 20:1-3).

7. The ascension and session also completes the glorification of Christ. (Acts 2:33, Philippians 2:9, 1 Peter 3:22).


The post ascension appearances of Christ to John described in Revelation 1 must have shown His glory much more vividly. The ascension having taken place, Christ was then ready to begin other ministries in behalf of His own and of the world.

The Lord has been exalted in heaven and is full of glory. The ascension was His graduation, going back to the Father and hearing Him say "well done". The mission is accomplished, everything is done, You now begin a new phase of the plan.

The Method - a gradual movement upwards as if supported by a cloud. Acts 1:9
The Promise was that he would return in a similar way.

Acts 1:6-11 gives a description of the ascension. This immediately tells us that the Lord is coming again, the ascension is the guarantee of the second coming. It also tells us how He will come in exactly the same way He left us. It is an actual fact of history.

It is not a symbolic thing. As it happened so will the Second Advent happen. From the past we have confidence in the present and assurance for the future. The ascension occurred near Bethany on the Mount of Olives. The Lord traveled as if He were supported by a cloud going up in a long upward movement. There is a companion passage in Luke 24:50-
53. The disciples' response was to praise God for the ten days until Pentecost. They had victory in their souls after witnessing the resurrection.

**WAS THERE MORE THAN ONER ASCENSION?**

The problem passage which the liberals bring up is in John 20:17 Did He ascend to heaven before the public ascension? Some think that John 20:17 indicates one or more ascensions before the one detailed in Acts I. However, the verb "I ascend" is most likely a futuristic present referring to the coming public ascension of Acts I and referring to it with certainty. It is as if the Lord were saying to Mary, "Stop clinging to Me. There is no need for this, as I am not yet at the point of permanent ascension. You will still have the opportunity to see Me. However, there is no question but that I certainly will ascend to My Father.”

It is the Lord's exaltation. The disciples watched as Christ was taken up and could see it as the beginning of the victory march. The Lord was glorified by the Father with the glory He had prior to the incarnation. He has been exalted above all principalities. The Lord was not only raised up from the grave but was raised bodily into heaven in praise and glory. In the ascension we have the beginning of the glorification of the Lord Jesus Christ who has won the victory in the angelic conflict.

**SIX POINTS ON THE PURPOSE OF THE EXALTATION:**

[a] He was glorified that He might glorify the Father.

[b] That He might be a Prince and a Saviour.

[c] That He might enter heaven as a forerunner for ourselves.

[d] That He might enter heaven for Himself.

[e] That He might act as High Priest on our behalf.

[f] That He await the complete subjection of His enemies.

The purpose was to show that the victory on the Cross might be shown as complete, that the victory might win the glory and that it might be appropriated by us.

There is a purpose in the ascension which is integrated into us as believers as the Lord Jesus Christ is acting on our behalf now. The ascension tells us that He arrived in heaven in victory and glory.

The post ascension ministries of the Lord Jesus Christ are as follows as far as Chafer notes them:-

**POST ASCENSION MINISTRIES**

[a] God's great power is shown towards us.

[b] We have a great high priest.

[c] Our great high priest is in heaven.

[d] In the blood of Christ we can be bold.

[e] Glory is the Lord’s now and will be ours later.

[f] Because of the ascension the Lord has received the promise of the Holy Spirit and poured it forth upon His obedient and believing disciples.

[g] He has gone to prepare a place for us.

[h] Because of His exaltation the believers will do greater works than Christ did in the days of His humiliation.

[i] The power of the glorified Christ is available through the power of the Holy Spirit.

[j] Jesus Christ has been exalted above the angels and received a name that is above every name, everything is subject to Him and has become His footstool.

The final triumph of the Lord Jesus Christ is at the Second Advent. The Rapture of the Church will be the victory march of believers to heaven. The Lord Jesus Christ is pictured at the right hand of the Father which is a position of power, authority and glory. The Lord has full glory now.
On earth His glory was shielded, now it is full. This is the difference of His appearances after He arose and after He ascended. This is shown by Paul's meeting with the Lord on the road to Damascus. John on the Island of Patmos gives another idea of this. Here he sees the risen and ascended Lord which causes him to faint. It would have been great to walk with the Lord on earth but it is even greater to anticipate being with Him in glory. The Lord has become King of Kings and Lord of Lords at His entry into heaven. The biggest change in heaven is that a man is now seated at the right hand of the Father, the God-man Jesus Christ.

God becomes man to be a Saviour. The Saviour is glorified through His victory and becomes our High Priest. The High Priest completes His job and takes up His crown to become forever King of Kings.

CHRIST'S PRESENT MINISTRY
[a] Head of the Church,
[b] He is the priest for His people
[c] He is preparing a place for us.

THE LORD'S FUTURE MINISTRY
[a] He will raise the dead,
[b] Reward those who believe in Him
[c] Rule.

IN HEAVEN
[a] He is High Priest,
[b] He bestows spiritual gifts
[c] He ever lives to make intercession for us
[d] He appears for His own in the presence of God.

ON EARTH
[a] He indwells His Church,
[b] He abides with His Church,
[c] He sent His Spirit to minister to the Church.

Hebrews 10:11-14 gives the plan behind this. We should be keen about thinking of the return of the Lord which was the motivation which sent the early believers throughout the world. He is awaiting his enemies becoming His footstool. The victor in the ancient world would sit on his throne on the battlefield and the conquered enemy would bow before him and become his footstool. The Lord has won the angelic conflict. The blood of Christ has dealt with sin. The Lord is waiting on His throne until the last enemy is brought in who will be subject to this sign of absolute total defeat. Satan, sin and death are the final enemies.

The writer to the Hebrews makes it clear that these things are certain. We must get a glimpse of the power of the Lord Jesus Christ every week. They must be aware that the victory has been won and we are involved in a mopping up campaign. The Lord is no longer on the Cross, He is seated in glory at the right hand of God. Our crosses are empty crosses because the job is done. When we suffer pressure we should boldly approach the throne of grace where the Lord Jesus Christ is seated in glory, we are on the winning team. See yourself in the light of the ascension and draw on the power that the Lord has for you.

DOCTRINES
CHRIST: ASCENSION AND SESSION

ASCENSION
1. Jesus in His resurrection body travelled from earth to heaven. (John 20:17)
2. With Jesus Christ now in heaven, He has given His Spirit to indwell us on earth. (John 7:37-39)
SESSION
3. Upon his arrival in heaven, God the Father said "sit down at my right hand" (Psalm 110:1, Hebrews 1:3,13).
4. The session of Christ indicates the acceptability of the first man, Jesus Christ, into heaven (Ephesians 1:19) and guarantees the acceptability of all believers (Ephesians 2:6).
5. The session of Christ declared Him superior to all angels (Hebrews 2:6-8, 1 Peter 3:22).
6. The session of Christ produced victory in the angelic conflict. (Hebrews 1:3-13).
7. The session begins the subjection of His enemies "under his feet" (Psalm 110:1), fulfilled at the Second Advent (Colossians 2:15, Revelation 20:1-3).
9. Seated at the right hand of the Father, Jesus now ministers as our great high priest (Hebrews 7:23-25).

ROCK - see page 62 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]
*CHRIST: PROPHET, PRIEST AND KING - see page 12 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 18 - THE SECOND ADVENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

Christ is coming for His people. This has been a contentious issue since the start of the Church. In the early church they were living in the daily expectation of the return of Christ. This was the power and motivation behind the early church. This is a very practical doctrine of Scripture and not something to go overboard on. If you have a biblical view you will be practical rather than foolish.

It is important to realise that you cannot go to one place only in the New Testament to get a full explanation of the Second Coming. You should go through the New Testament in a chronological sense. For instance if the theme is mentioned in James you look at James first, then Galatians, 1 and 2 Corinthians, 1 and 2 Thessalonians and so on.

THE PROMISE

In John 14:1-4 we have the introduction of the Lord coming again. It is still future. The purpose of the knowledge of the Second Coming is that you might have peace of mind. It is that history has a purpose and that He is coming again. History is not going to end with a maybe or might but it will end with a definite coming of the Lord. The Lord's ascension was not a cause for sorrow but he went so that he can return in fulfillment of John 14.

The expectation that He would return was so strong in the ancient church that they all expected to be present at the return of the Lord. Because there was such an expectation there was great consternation in some of the churches when some of the believers started to die.

THE THESSALONIANS

The church at Thessalonika was a young and enthusiastic church but without a lot of understanding of God's Word. This is why Bible teaching is so important in the young church. Whilst some had died, others had been martyred and yet others had given up their jobs waiting for the return of the Lord. In 1 Thessalonians Paul gives them an answer. In chapter 4 verses 11 and 12 Paul tells them that as a part of their witness they...
should work honestly minding our own business. The Second Coming of Christ should not create people who have a bad witness. You should not stand in a white sheet waving a palm branch around as many people have over the centuries.

In 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18 Paul says that he would not have them ignorant about this event. In verse 18 this news should bring comfort which ties in with John 14 where the Lord said that believers should not worry. As long as we have got it right we will receive comfort and not get upset. Conversely if you have not got comfort from the Second Coming you have got it wrong.

In God's `plan you should act in conformity with 1 Thessalonians 5 rather than the so called ten commandments. We are going beyond the Mosaic law to something greater because we are looking forward to something greater than Moses was. Moses was looking forward to the Cross, we are looking forward to the Second Coming. Moses had the concept that the Messiah would come. We have the knowledge that He has come and that He is coming again. If you understand that His coming is imminent then you will be keeping the commandments in chapter 5.

There is quite a lot of argument about this subject. Those who violently argue about this often do not measure up in their lives to either 1 Thessalonians 4:11-12 or chapter 5. If you come across people like this you should tell them that when they get their life in order you will sit down and discuss theology with them.

**VIEWS OF THE SECOND COMING**

There are many different ideas on the Second Coming, we have the pre-millennial, pre tribulation, post tribulation, mid tribulation and Amillennial. The one that does not require the spiritualising of Scripture is the pre tribulation, pre millennial viewpoint.

This was the view which was held by the Early Church and conforms with the Word of God. It can therefore be classified as the orthodox position. The doctrine of the Second Coming should have an impact on our life. If it does not we have misunderstood it.

In the first two hundred years nearly all the Christians believed in a literal coming again, Rapture, Millennium and it was not until Origen, Clement and Augustine of Hippo in the third and fourth centuries that you get the figurative interpretation. It is to these men that the reformed group belong. There is better evidence for the orthodox view than that proposed by the Reformed groups.

The Second Coming of Christ is said to be mentioned 318 times in 260 chapters of the Bible and occupies one in twenty five verses. Therefore if you think that the Second Coming is not important one in twenty five verses in the New Testament says that you are wrong.

It is not an optional extra although all the liberal churches side step it and many evangelicals do not hold a stated position because it is controversial. As one in twenty five verses in the New Testament deals with this subject you should have at least two messages a year on this subject.

**DIVISION OF THE SECOND ADVENT**

This one doctrine is made up of two events, the first part is when He comes for his church, the second when He comes back with His people. This first event is quite often referred to as the Rapture whilst the second is known as the Second Advent.

At the Second Advent we know exactly where He is going to come to as the Mount of Olives will split in two when He arrives. We can go to Israel and stand on the Mount of Olives and say to the Lord that I know this is where you will arrive on your return. Zechariah 14:4-5

There is a time gap between them and this is where the tribulation occurs. This is a cause of disagreement between the dispensationalist and the reformed theologians. It is essential with this that you teach something thus it is important that you come to grips with it.

With unfulfilled prophecy you have to be guided by the Holy Spirit and what the Word of God says. Scripture must be compared with Scripture and find out what does fit together. There are a lot of good systems which are internally consistent but do not comply with the Word of God. The correct view will get you out leading a holy life and doing the Lord's will.
In Matthew 24 the disciples were totally unprepared for the statement in John 14. In the former passage they had been prepared for the return of the Messiah to set up the kingdom, not that He was going away as stated in John 14. In the latter passage He is to prepare a place for them and return to take them to that place which was clearly heaven. There are therefore two separate events.

**CONTRAST BETWEEN THE RAPTURE AND THE SECOND ADVENT**

The progressive revelation of this doctrine is important. There is a contrast between the Lord coming for His saints and coming with His saints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAPTURE</th>
<th>SECOND ADVENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Christ comes for his saints to take them from the earth to heaven</td>
<td>Christ returns to earth to set up His kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living saints are translated</td>
<td>No saints are translated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The saints go to heaven</td>
<td>The saints remain on the earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The world is unchanged and continues in sin</td>
<td>The world is judged and righteousness is established.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a deliverance from the day of wrath</td>
<td>Deliverance for those believers who have survived the day of wrath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is imminent and could occur at any time</td>
<td>Preceeded by many events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a truth revealed only in the New Testament</td>
<td>This is a prominent doctrine in both Testaments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This relates to only those who are saved</td>
<td>Relates to both saved and unsaved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan is not bound and is very active on the earth</td>
<td>Satan is bound for the Millennium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saints leave the earth in their resurrection bodies</td>
<td>Saints remain to repopulate the earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rapture relates to the Church</td>
<td>The Second Advent and Millennium relates to covenants with Israel - Davidic and Palestinian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A time of comfort</td>
<td>A time of terror for unbelievers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the pre tribulation view which contrasts with the post Tribulation view which has both items occurring at the same time. The truth of the pre tribulation concept is correct is based on the literal acceptance of the prophecy contained in the Scriptures while the post Tribulation concept relies on symbolic interpretation of the prophecies.

The Lord could come for us at any time, with nothing in Scripture requiring fulfilment before the Lord can come for His church. The last statement or prayer in the Bible says “Even so come Lord Jesus”. They lived every day expecting the Lord to come and therefore the prayer was legitimate. There are also many verses in the Old Testament which deal with the Second Advent of Christ thus those in the Tribulation will have a timetable for the Second Coming of the Lord. It will be an encouragement for them.

It is a good on this subject to leave behind in our wills a statement of why we have disappeared. There will be more saved ‘in’ the Tribulation period, not only due to the 144,000 witnesses, the angels but also those to whom we have witnessed and leave messages for.

**DOCTRINES**

**RAPTURE** - see page 59 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**LESSON 19 THE RETURN WITH HIS SAINTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 19 | His Coming with His saints [135] | Zechariah 14:1-5  
Revelation 19:11-21  
Revelation 20:1-15 | Christ 1st and 2nd Adveents  
Judgment Seat of Christ  
Great White Throne |
INTRODUCTION

The Second Advent is a term used for the coming for His saints and coming with His saints. In the Old Testament we have a lot of references to the Day of the Lord. The Day of the Lord commences with the Tribulation period, the coming with His saints and to judge the world. It is important that one gets the vocabulary correct, the Day of the Lord is not a day, it is at least seven years.

INTERPRETATION

The Lord's coming brings into focus the importance of interpretation. The way you interpret the Bible is going to determine the way that you view prophecy. If you have a literal approach to the Word of God you will have a different approach to that of a person who does not have a literal approach. A statement that is obviously meant to be figurative you take it in the normal grammatical sense, you are not to be silly about it. When the plain sense makes common sense then seek no other sense.

If you have a literal view you will end up with a pre Tribulational, pre Millennial view of prophecy. By taking a literal approach you are allowing the Bible to interpret itself, rather than superimposing your own concepts on it. Before you teach any prophetic book you should tell the people that you are taking a literalist view. Many ministers avoid the prophetic area because it causes too many problems. However if a minister teaches the Word of God thoroughly they will not have any problems.

USE OF KNOWLEDGE OF THE SECOND ADVENT

In the news the signs of the end of our era are manifest. Even unbelievers can see them. What should the believers do when they see what is happening. If you know what the Scriptures say you are not going to get upset with things falling apart.

When economically things go astray as a believer if you know what God's programme is in advance you can be relaxed in the middle of the pressure. You are not going to be shaken as to what is going to happen. In the case of nuclear war you know that there is not going to be a nuclear winter or that the whole population of the world is going to be destroyed but the Lord will return, and it will not be to a radioactive world.

Whilst there will be massive depopulation at the end of the Tribulation there will still be a third of the population still living. This will give you a lot more comfort than the liberals will receive. If you teach it thoroughly in your church you will have a relaxed group of believers who knows his Word and policy. When we see the sign of the times we should keep our heads down and keep working to go into the world and preach the gospel.

The teaching of the Tribulation will be of great importance for those who are in it as it will give them a timetable of events. The correct understanding of prophecy will make you a more active evangelist. If it does not you do not have it right. Many people will dissuade you from prophecy on the basis that people who become interested in that become unbalanced. About four percent of the New Testament contains verses about Jesus Christ coming with His saints. It is therefore very important. It is also important in regard to the communion service which was instituted until he comes.

When will he come, how will he come? There are a number of questions that can be asked. A lot of Christians go through the rituals but do not think about it. When the Lord laid out the communion service He made it quite clear that He was coming again. When we take communion we are celebrating the coming of the King. The liberals remember a dead martyr. The Great Tribulation is not important to us as we will not be involved in it. It is important to understand it as it is part of God's plan.

The teaching on this time period in the Old Testament is so specific that they will be able to know the day that the Lord will return. Matthew 24 lays out a timetable as well. They will have tremendous assurance and will know when things are going to happen. This is essential because of their situation. This is their survival manual and is also something to encourage us. Some people say that the Great Tribulation is not so bad but they have not studied the Old Testament. It is the day of wrath, the day of Jacob's trouble and the day of the Lord.

THE DAY OF THE LORD
This is a doctrine which has been progressively revealed down the ages particularly through the minor prophets, Daniel through to Malachi. The key for these things is the Revelation which is basically the chronological account as it is in a sequence.

In the majority of cases this period designated as the Day of the Lord covers the period from the Rapture to the Second Advent of Christ. In Zechariah 14 there is mentioned the final battles of the Armageddon Campaign which is quite a long campaign. It begins with an invasion down through Armenia, sweeps down through Israel with one branch going south the other moving towards the west to Libya. They hear of problems from the north and turn round and head back towards Israel where this major conflict takes place.

The Revived Roman Empire has an amphibious landing which combines with the vast Eastern Army. The result is absolute devastation and an horrific campaign. In Zechariah 14 we have a sequence of events which your system of interpretation is going to colour how you look at things.

Here it states that the Lord is going to return on the Mount of Olives which can be tied in with Acts 1 where the angels tell of the Lord's return. Prior to this there is going to be an horrific time in Jerusalem with half the city falling with many people being killed, raped and devastation on a massive scale.

The Revelation provides the binocular viewpoint on what is happening. Revelation 19:11 shows the Lord Jesus Christ arriving on a white horse as the Word of God. The language here will tie you back to the day of the Lord. We have the end of the tribulation period. It is the Lord who is referring to it ending it.

Daniel 2 shows the “rock” destroying the man made empires. It is extremely important to tie the whole thing together. Here we have it in chronological sequence as it is going to happen in the future. It is clear that this ties in with the Zechariah passage. If you do not have a literal view and you are not expecting it to happen then the Amillennialist will show you that it has happened historically and the Satan is bound now. People can only believe this falsehood because their interpretation of prophecy is different from their interpretation of the rest of the Word of God. If you adopt a literal view you will find a literal Millennium in Revelation 20. The Great White Throne judgment is followed by eternity future.

The sequence of events is the Rapture followed by the Tribulation, Second Advent, Resurrection of the Old Testament Saints and Tribulational martyrs, the Millennium, the Release of Satan, the Last Rebellion, Last Judgment and Eternity Future.

It is important to realise that God's plan is not limited on the earth it is not the end but the beginning. This is not the last of God's creation. If you think about that, the thought will overwhelm you. Peter talks about it as elements melting heat. It is not possible that Satan will win. The plan is given in the Word of God. We should be excited that we are with the Creator and that we are on the winning side. We are going somewhere not because of what we have done but because of what God has revealed to us. The Plan started in eternity past and goes through to eternity future.

Revelation is the key because if we have a chronological vision which sets the norm for the interpretation for everything else.

DOCTRINES

CHRIST: FIRST AND SECOND ADVENTS - see page 13 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST - see page 44 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

JUDGMENT: GREAT WHITE THRONE - see page 44 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

THE TRIBULATION OR TIME OF JACOB'S TROUBLE

General Scripture (Revelation Chapters 4-19)

1. Limits
   (a) Start - Rapture
   (b) Finish - 2nd Advent.
2. Length of Age - 7 years. (Daniel 9:27) This is the final section of the Jewish Age.
4. Scripture - completed Canon.
5. Evangelists - a special race - the Jews who have been scattered throughout the earth and speak almost every tongue - 144,000 evangelists (Revelation 7) It is noted that the tribe of Dan does not appear in this list - it was the tribe that lead in idolatry.
6. Major judgments - the Tribulation is a succession of judgments culminating in the 2nd Advent.
7. At death believers - Heaven (2 Corinthians 5:8)
8. At death unbelievers - Torments, Hades.
10. The Law - no Law (Matthew 5:17)
11. Holy Spirit - assists believers but does not indwell.
12. Environment - sinful
13. Satan - in Heaven or on earth for first 3 1/2 years, on earth only for second 3 1/2 years (Revelation 12:9)
14. Rebellion - Armageddon, one worldism politically and religiously.
15. Spirituality - resting in the promises of God.
16. Three sets of Judgments
   (a) Seal Judgments (Revelation 6 and 8)
   (b) Trumpet Judgments (Revelation 8)
   (c) Bowl Judgments (Revelation 15,16)
17. The last 7 years of the Post Flood Civilisation.
18. Anti Semitism at its maximum.

THE SECOND ADVENT

1. Israel under dispersion no longer represents Christ on this earth.
2. Israel is replaced by the Church, the Body of Christ. (Acts 2:47, 1 Corinthians 12:1-14, Ephesians 1:22,23,2:1-6, 4:4, 5, 5:23, 24, 30-32, Colossians 1: 18, 24, 2:19)
3. The Body of Christ is being completed by entering every believer of the Church Age into union with Christ. (Colossians 2:10, Hebrews 2:10)
4. When the Body is completed, the Rapture of the Church occurs. (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)
5. Then the Body becomes the Bride, and is prepared for the Second Advent.
   (a) The Bride receives a resurrection body like Christ's (1 Corinthians 15:51-57, Philippians 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2)
   (b) The Bride's old sin nature is removed. (Philippians 3:21)
   (c) The Bride is cleansed from human good. (1 Corinthians 3:12-16)
6. The Bride returns in triumph with Christ at the Second Advent. (1 Thessalonians 3:13, Revelation 19:6-8)
7. Then follows the conquest-
   (a) Satan imprisoned (Revelation 20:1-3)
   (b) Demons removed from the earth. (Zechariah 13:2, 1 Corinthians 15:24, 25, Colossians 2:15)
8. The removal of the demons changes the environment of the earth and causes perfect conditions during the Millennium.
   (a) Religion removed.
   (b) False doctrine removed.
   (c) Perfect environment restored.

SECTION D – PNEUMATOLOGY – THE HOLY SPIRIT

LESSON 20 - THE HOLY SPIRIT - PNEUMATOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

John 14:15-17 – In this passage the Lord Jesus Christ calls the Holy Spirit “another comforter”. Here John uses the word “allos” meaning another of the same kind in contrast to “heteros” which means another of a different kind. The Lord is saying that the Spirit will be the same presence as He has been.

THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD

The deity of the Spirit is the same as the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ and that of the Father. The word comforter is the word "parakletos" which means the one who comes alongside. It means more than comfort, it means the person who communicates and helps, counsels, the one who lifts, the glory and the lifter of my head as the Song of Songs says, "the glory and the lifter of my head".

MINISTRIES OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

The abiding of the Spirit is since the day of Pentecost forever. Abide means to stay with you until the end. This is unique to this age as it is only to the believers in the church age that Holy Spirit indwells forever. This was a big change that was not understood until after Pentecost when it became a reality. Prior to this the Holy Spirit was with believers and could be removed.

At Pentecost the Holy Spirit was no longer alongside but inside the believer. He comes permanently. People ask erroneously for the Holy Spirit to fall on them. If he Holy Spirit is in you how can He fall on you. We should be concerned that we are filled with the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit fell upon them at Pentecost and indwelt them permanently. If the Spirit is not in you then you are not a believer. Romans 8:9.
In John 14 the Lord Jesus Christ introduces the disciples to this world changing event in verse 17 where He says that the Spirit is with you and shall be [future tense] in you. David could pray the prayer, Lord take not thy Holy Spirit from me, Psalm 51:11 we should not, as it not something that the Spirit does now. Rather we should aim to be filled moment by moment so that we do not quench or grieve the Holy Spirit by disobedience in our lives.

In John 16:7-17 He expands on it. After the Ascension we have the Session of Christ after which He sends the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit has a ministry for unbelievers just as he has a ministry amongst us. He is going to convict the world of sin, righteousness and judgement. The sin that the Holy Spirit convicts of is unbelief.

**EVANGELISM**

When you are evangelising remember that the sin that is going to put the unbeliever in the Lake of Fire is unbelief not those sins that may be terrible or more wrong that other to you.

Secondly, remember that now that Christ is not on the earth they have not got a visible standard of righteousness so the Holy Spirit convicts the unbeliever of unrighteousness and the need of a Saviour.

Thirdly the Holy Spirit convicts of Judgement and giving them the fear of judgement that if they stood before almighty God they would be condemned. When you witness to others claim these verses that they will be convicted of sin, righteousness and judgement. This is the Holy Spirit's job and such a prayer will be honoured.

The Holy Spirit is called the spirit of truth, He is the teacher and revealer of truth. He is the teacher of things that the Lord has said. The Lord said that there were many things that He wanted to tell them that the Holy Spirit would reveal to them. His job is to draw the attention of man to the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and not to Himself. He does this through then Word of which He is the author as well as illuminating the Word.

In Church history it will be seen that it was not until the 4th century at the Council of Nicea that the character of the Holy Spirit was discussed fully and explained. In the early Church they did not stress the Holy Spirit at all. It is important however that you understand His person and His work. The Spirit is what we would call humble and is standing back and ministering to and of the Lord Jesus Christ.

**HOLY SPIRIT AND PRAYER**

We do not pray to the Holy Spirit. We should pray to the Father and not to the Lord Jesus Christ either. We talk to God the Father through the Son and in the power of the Holy Spirit. We get into fellowship by confessing any sins in our lives. The Holy Spirit fills us.

In the ancient world the prayers always started, “Heavenly Father I have sinned”. We do well to follow our spiritual fathers example. With sin out of the way we are restored to a full functional relationship with the Father through the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit We should be thanking the Lord for all that the Holy Spirit is showing us.

There is equality in the Godhead, the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. 2 Corinthians 13:14. He is the one who puts His arm around you and carries you through. He is the ever present contact with the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. It is the Spirit which draws us near. Matthew 28:18 gives us the great commission and is again a Trinity text.

**THE HOLY SPIRIT IS A PERSON**

This shows He is therefore a person and not a force. Even believers talk about God the Holy Spirit as an influence and do not recognise Him as a person. Rejection of the Holy Spirit as a person often is replaced with the concept that He is the personification of the power for good whilst Satan is the personification of evil. This denial has occurred throughout Church History. It is false and a dangerous error which Satan is using today with the rebirth of paganism in many places

It is important to realise that He is a person and worthy to receive love and honour and that you are not robbing the Holy Spirit of your love and adoration. He is a person who is infinitely divine, holy, loving and wishes to get hold of us so that He can use us.

If however you think of the Spirit as a power you may well consider that it is a power which you want to get hold of to use. This is the difference between those who are in the extreme Pentecostal area and evangelicals. The Biblical view is not that the Spirit is a power for us to use, the truth is the opposite; the Spirit being a person wants to get hold of your life and run your life. The issue comes down to worship. We do not ask the Holy Spirit to fall on us like pennies from heaven but we do want the Holy Spirit to control us and to work in us. The only failing that should take place is falling on our knees in prayer. The concept that is being taught in the letters of the New Testament is walking in the Spirit and being led by Him.

If we understand Him as a person do we treat Him as a person?. Do we know the communion and fellowship of the Holy Spirit as the disciple knew the fellowship of the Lord Jesus Christ whilst on earth. We should have a minute by minute walk with the Holy Spirit just as the disciples had a minute by minute walk with the Lord.
He came that we might have fellowship with Him. This is the answer to the many problems believers have with the gifts of the Holy Spirit. The issue is not seeking after dramatic signs and wonders, the issue is whether you are experiencing a moment by moment communion of the Holy Spirit. The extreme Pentecostals will be rebuked by you in this way, and hopefully they will seek the walk with God that you show! We are called to be light. They have moments of grandeur in which they may or may not be spiritual we are to show the moment by moment fellowship with the Lord through the indwelling Spirit.

The doctrine of the person of the Lord Jesus Christ is of great importance in the Church. It is going to set the tone of worship in the church.

It is a very important doctrine. Many conservative churches have suffered because of a lack of teaching in this area and people have then gone to Pentecostal churches where they all too often get led astray on the Holy Spirit. Many people in the Pentecostal churches are worn out, they have spoken in tongues, seen miracles and healing and yet they are depressed waiting on the Spirit to fall. They are seeking bible teaching churches where the truth of walking in the Spirit is fully and accurately taught.

In the Greek the spirit is in the neuter but by being in the neuter it does not mean that the object is an "it". Whenever the Holy Spirit is talked about there is a personal pronoun used. It is of interest that the word for child brephos is also in the neuter but is obviously not a thing. The other words for a young child, teknon and paidion are also in the neuter.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD** – see page 38 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT** – see page 38 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**HOLY SPIRIT: SYMBOLS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT** – see page 38 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**LESSON 21 - TRANSITIONAL MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>H S Ministry – Transitional</td>
<td>John 16:8-11</td>
<td>H.S Ministry to Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luke 2:25 -26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew 12:22-37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mark 3:22-30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTRODUCTION**

This period occurred between the ministry of John the Baptist and the Day of Pentecost. This is a change that the Lord prepared the people for during His ministry. We have a position in Christ with the indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit and we are in a highly superior position compared with the Old Testament saints. Most Christians do not understand what they have

Three stages in the expanded ministry of the Holy Spirit is given in the Gospels

**Stage 1 - Luke 11:9-13** - where the Lord tells the disciples to ask for the Holy Spirit which was something that had not occurred in the Old Testament. This was just after the commissioning of the twelve in verse 8. As the people went out round the nation to preach, to heal, to raise the dead and cast out demons a dramatic and taxing spiritual service they came back knowing that they needed power to do the job. This gave Jesus the opportunity to teach the principle of empowerment by the Spirit.

They realise that there are major enemies to be fought and inner resources greater than man can supply is needed. He therefore says ask for the Holy Spirit. It is of interest that none of the gospels divulge whether any of the disciples took up the offer. It was so novel that they were all a bit hesitant about doing it.

**Stage 2 - John 14:16-17** - where He explained that the Holy Spirit would be in them rather than with them. This is about a year later than the passage in Luke. They realise that the Spirit is with them and that they need more and the Lord says that there will be more. He explains that on the day of Pentecost the Father will send the Holy Spirit and that they will not be left comfortless.
What is seen here is that the resources to face the enemy after the Cross will need to be bettered and the Lord is going
to upgrade it by sending the Spirit. Rather than being with them on a temporary basis it is going to be a permanent
indwelling of the Spirit.

**Stage 3 - John 20:21-22** - where the Lord gave them the Holy Spirit to assist them until Pentecost. It is clear that the
Lord is tasking the disciples with replacing Him, as his witness in the world; a task we now have. This is shown clearly in
Matthew 28:20 which is the great commission. As it is given both here and in Matthew 28 it is of great importance.

The Lord says that he is sending them out but not in their own strength but in the power of the Holy Spirit. This is going to
last them for the ten days until the giving of the Holy Spirit at the feast of Pentecost.

First He says ask, next that he will pray and thirdly He breathes on them to give them a temporary empowerment.

Luke 24:49 - this is a few days after John 20. It is clear that what was happening in John 20 was temporary until the
indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

Acts 1:4-8 - Luke is the author of Acts and thus the book of Acts follows. As the Cross is the centre point of human
history so Pentecost is the start of this new period of human history. The expanded ministries of the Holy Spirit since
Pentecost are very important, intricately related to the angelic conflict.

**INTENSIFICATION OF THE ANGELIC CONFLICT**

The activity of Satan and his angels since the Cross has been greatly intensified over what it was before. The Cross is
the defeat of Satan strategically. A strategic defeat means that the enemy is beaten but he is not finished. The big battle
has been won but there are a lot of little campaigns to be won before he is finally eliminated completely.

Satan knew from the Cross that he was finished and it was from that time that he went into top gear with evil. If the
Christian does not understand the absolute necessity of living and walking in the Spirit they are in trouble as they will not
have the resources to deal with Satan. In many ways the Old Testament saints had it easier than we do but we have
more resources. It is therefore important that we know about them and use them.

Many believers fail because they do not walk in close fellowship with the Spirit. The normal Christian life should be one
lived in the power of the Holy Spirit. People that fail do so for one reason only, sin which leads them away from the
control of the Holy Spirit. As a believer we must learn to live and walk in the Spirit.

Fundamentalists are afraid that if they teach about the Holy Spirit their people will become Pentecostal. However if you
do not teach it they are much more likely to than if you do teach it. By teaching it you can help Pentecostals out of their
error. You have nothing to fear if you teach it honestly. The Pentecostal church down the road probably teaches this
subject wrongly.

**THE HOLY SPIRIT’S MINISTRY IN THE LIFE OF OUR LORD.**

The Lord said that the believers would produce greater works than He did. What does this strange verse mean? This is
based on the fact that whilst the Lord had a ministry of some three years which was totally sustained by the Holy Spirit
believers may have 30 years to reach the lost.

The problem for us is that we don't use our time for ministry of which only 15% may be under the power of the Spirit. Any
work done in the power of the Holy Spirit is first class work and copies the Lord Jesus Christ.

Your greatest mission as a minister is to get your people out of the pews and into the street in the filling of the Holy Spirit.
The difficulty is going to be with people who do not want to be obedient to God's Word.

The sustaining work of the Holy Spirit was deliberately misconstrued by the Pharisees who said that Jesus was demon
possessed and using the powers of Satan. This according to the Lord was the unpardonable sin.

**THE UNPARDONABLE SIN.**

Pentecostals will often accuse fundamentalists of Blaspheming the Holy Ghost when they criticise the Pentecostals
format - this is a misuse of Scripture. You often find that those who cry loudest about the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit are
quenching the Spirit in their life.

The unpardonable sin in Jesus day was to accuse him of being satanic and so reject him as saviour. He is not present
today to do such a thing personally, but the unpardonable sin remains as total rejection of him as saviour. No believer
can commit that sin, as they have accepted him as saviour. The most serious sin in the believers life today is the
quenching, grieving and resisting the Holy Spirit. A believer cannot commit the unforgivable sin. We are to live the Holy
life, resisting sin.
THE DAY OF PENTECOST

In Acts 1:8-14 they were to be baptised in the Spirit not many days hence. They were promised power after that the Holy Spirit came upon them. They were waiting for the Spirit to come upon them from John 14 via Luke 24:49 to empower them for the rest of the ministry on the earth.

In Acts chapter 2 we have a record of the event. The Spirit came upon them that is they were permanently indwelt as a group for the first time in this period Acts 2:1-4.

These people as a result go out and preach the gospel in many languages which were understood and many people were converted as result of hearing the gospel. In verse 4 they are filled with the Holy Spirit and from verse 5 onwards it shows what happened.

The baptism of the Holy Spirit occurred at this time uniting the Christians with the Lord Jesus Christ. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at one point in time, namely the point of salvation when we are unite with Christ. The rest of the New Testament deals with the effect of what happened from this the birth of the Church.

We are filled with the Holy Spirit at salvation and it is something that we lose when we sin. We are still indwelt but our OSN is in control. Whether you are working for the Lord for not depends whether you are in fellowship with Him or not.

If we are going to live for Christ we have to do it in the power of the Spirit, if you are not filled you will fail.

DOCTRINES

HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY TO JESUS CHRIST – see page 39 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

HOLY SPIRIT: SINS AGAINST THE SPIRIT - see page 40 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 22 HOLY SPIRIT MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
<pre><code>                          |         |  
</code></pre>
                              |         | John 20:22  
                              |         | Luke 24:49  

HOLY SPIRIT IN THE OLD TESTAMENT

We see a change in the work of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament compared with the work in the Church Age and in the transition period with the Ministry of the Holy Spirit during the period of Christ's Ministry.

As the Cross is a focal point in the unfolding drama of redemption so Pentecost is the turning point in the ministry of the Holy Spirit in the lives of believers.

The gospels really belong in the period of history still covered by the rules of the Old Testament or the Dispensation of the Jews rather than those of the New or Dispensation of the Church. The exception is John chapters 14-17, where Jesus speaks of the age that is coming at Pentecost.

In the Gospels the Lord Jesus Christ is teaching the disciples to become apostles or sent ones not only to Israel but also to the whole world. This ministry of the Holy Spirit which we now enjoy they longed to enjoy. We have a superior spiritual position than they did, than Isaiah and Jeremiah did.

So many people fail to live up to the tremendous position they have in Christ, the Old Testament saints longed to have it but we are not using it. The thought of it should purify us, and make us keen for service as we are sealed, guided, empowered, indwelt and baptised. The three years before Pentecost, during the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ was a time of transition.

The change commences in John 14:16-17. Before Pentecost the Holy Spirit assisted believers often for a limited time to have a special function in the plan of God, since Pentecost the believer is indwelt forever, He is not with us but in us. How you view this will determine how you view spirituality and the Bible.
It has to be remembered that a lot of things which are said prior to Pentecost are going to be different once Pentecost has occurred. Once the Cross had occurred believers no longer had to bring lambs to be a physical sacrifice. Nowadays we obey Scripture by confessing our sins to God.

As a Christian you do not go to Leviticus to find out what you do about sin but this does not mean that you do not read Leviticus as a book that introduces you to the death of the Lord Jesus Christ on the Cross. In Leviticus now we discover wonderful things about the Lord and his sacrifice, about what they mean. We do not however go there to find out what we are to do about sin today

Similarly the ministry of the Spirit as seen prior to the Cross is not relevant to us today due to the change that took place at Pentecost. If you are going to live as a Christian should do now you must take into account the Cross and Pentecost. We have a superior position than believers before in that we have a position in Christ and the Spirit is in us. We are in a position where we can spiritually really advance in service but we do not because we do not know what the Bible is teaching, we do not believe it or apply it in our lives.

This topic is vital in our lives especially with the modern Pentecostal movement who link up the Old and New Testament and get it wrong. It is therefore essential that you teach the true doctrine of the Holy Spirit to people so that they do not get confused. We should therefore understand our place in the plan of God. We are members of the Body of Christ and the Bride of Christ. We must live as the body and the bride. The central point of this is the ministry of the Holy Spirit.

We need to look at it in three stages:-

[a] the ministry of the Holy Spirit in Old Testament times,
[b] the transition ministry during the Lord's earthly ministry,
[c] the ministry of the Holy Spirit during the Church Age.

In Genesis 1:2 the Holy Spirit is said to flutter, like a hen fluttering its feathers over its nest over the face of the waters. It is clear from Scripture that the Lord Jesus Christ is the Creator. So why is the Holy Spirit fluttering over the waters for. In Deuteronomy 32:11 we see the co operative work of the Spirit in relation to the Lord Jesus Christ in Creation. The Spirit is involved in creation with the Lord Jesus Christ.

He is also involved in revelation 2 Peter 1:21, 2 Samuel 23:2, Micah 3:8. In each case the Holy Spirit is involved with speaking or the writing of the Word of God.

Prior to Pentecost the Holy Spirit convicted men of the need to trust in the Lord Jesus Christ. This is seen in Genesis 6:3 where before the flood the Spirit had a ministry which was being ignored. The Lord showed that there was a limit to what the Lord was willing to do. The Lord said that the Holy Spirit would not always strive with man. This verse says that they have got 120 years but of course man has not got that time now. Progressively the life span was cut. Genesis 6:3 dealt with a time when man was living to 900 years of age.

The Spirit strives with man that he needs to find God because once he is dead it is too late. The word "strive" means to judge or convict. Today we have 70 years to respond to the gospel.

We have not only the evidence that the blood of Christ covers all potentially but that the Spirit strives with all. With the exception of the eight who were saved at the time of the flood the Holy Spirit strived with perhaps millions of people for 120 years yet they rejected Him.

This convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit continues in a more detailed way in John 16:8-11. Another area in which the Holy Spirit has been universally involved in over man's history is regeneration. The Holy Spirit is the agent of regeneration.

In Psalm 51 David speaks of his experience of walking with and failing to walk with the Holy Spirit. It deals with the time of David's terrible sin of adultery with Bathsheba, followed by the arranging of the murder of her husband, Uriah the Hittite. David was under great conviction and realised that he was under conviction by the Spirit and that it had a terrible influence on the Spirit in his life.

In this Psalm we have the Old Testament form of 1 John 1:9. Here he pleads the loving kindness and tender mercies of God having dealt with his sin. I acknowledge my sin, my transgression is forever before me. In verses 10-12 David asks the Lord to create in him a new heart. All he has now is conviction and pressure.

In verse 11 he says not to take the Holy Spirit from him. This is a bona fide for David but not for us today. After this time David went on to write Psalms and was therefore controlled by the Spirit again. If we sin in the Church Age we are not in danger of the Holy Spirit being taken from us, He is in you permanently.
However if you have sin in your life He cannot strengthen, encourage or teach you even though He still indwells but convicts you of your sin. David however could lose the Holy Spirit.

**The extent of the work of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament.**

Three important areas:

- He was in certain believers: Joseph: Genesis 41:38, Joshua :Numbers 27:18, Daniel Daniel 4:8, 5:11-14,
- He came upon some: Numbers 24:2, Judges 3:10, 11:29, 1 Samuel 10:10, 2 Chronicles 15:1
- He filled Bezalel Exodus 31:3, 35:31

Not all the believers in the Old Testament experienced the ministries of the Holy Spirit beyond that of regeneration.

After regeneration the normal Old Testament believer understood the Word of God and applied it to their lives. In addition you tried to keep the Mosaic law, and of course failed many times. When sin occurred you brought animal sacrifices, and then through each year you kept the feasts and festivals as a testimony that you believed the plan of God for history.

In the New Testament we are saved by the same means, but we do not bring an offering rather we accept the death of Christ on the Cross and grow by walking in the Spirit. The Old Testament believers were not asked to walk in the Spirit.

In the New Testament we are saved by the same means, we do not bring an offering and accept the death of Christ on the Cross and grow by walking in the Spirit. The Old Testament believers were not asked to walk in the Spirit.

As shown above some people were given a special unction or anointing of the Holy Spirit which came upon them to function in a special way. When that job was over the Spirit was taken from them and they waited for Messiah to come.

Many say that they would like to go back to the simplicity of the Mosaic law but we are in so much a superior position as to make such a thought quite inappropriate. From this it is clear why the apostles said that the Old Testament prophets longed to see this day.

**Are you walking in the Spirit and aware of His ministry in your life on a daily basis?.**

A thorough study of these doctrines gives us good information for those who are involved in the Charismatic movements. You are too busy being led, taught, encouraged, corrected, convicted, and strengthened by the Holy Spirit to worry about tongues and other erroneous manifestations. In the Old Testament there was no Fruit of the Spirit, Baptism, Indwelling or Sealing ministries of the Spirit.

The only person we know was assisted by the Holy Spirit for his whole life was John the Baptist who the Scriptures tell us was assisted from out of "ek" his mother's womb.

It is reasonable to assume that from Pentecost onwards there would be a greater working of the Holy Spirit than in previous ages.

Two examples of people at the time of Christ who were assisted by the Holy Spirit - Zacharias - Luke 1:11 ff., Simeon the priest Luke 2:25 who waited his whole life to see the Messiah and to give a single prophecy which is recorded in Scripture and which was a source of great blessing as Mary remembered it. Simeon's whole life culminated in this event for which he had the assistance of the Spirit.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT** – see page 39 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**LESSON 23 - HOLY SPIRIT – REGENERATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

This is the work of the Holy Spirit which changes us from unbelievers to believers and therefore sons of God. This creates a mockery among those who do not believe that they need a Saviour. The unbeliever has to realise that only God can provide the power and the will to come to newness of life.

Regeneration

In John 3:3-9 we see that regeneration means to be born again. The Holy Spirit is the agent of regeneration. We note that there are two ministries of the Holy Spirit, the convicting ministry and the enabling ministry. This is why the man who rejects the gospel is without hope at the day of judgement. That person has also rejected and spurned the work of the Holy Spirit.

He has three things against him, he has ignored the Word of God, he has ignored the testimony of creation, the plan of God which is clearly working out, he has ignored the command to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and you will be saved. He has been actively rejecting God in all three persons.

Ministry of the Holy Spirit

Romans 1:16-32 - having cast aside the ministry of Christ in their life the rejection shows that there is no hope. Another passage which reflects this ministry is 2 Corinthians 3:6 “The letter killeth but the Spirit giveth life.”

He takes the evaluation in context. He does not mean that an evaluation of the Scriptures kills and the Spirit gives life. The contrast is between the written word in ink and the word written on the heart. It is the Spirit which brings the letter to life.

The Word of God justly brings death but the Spirit gives life. No amount of preaching irrespective of how orthodox it is will regenerate unless the Holy Spirit works. It is He and He alone that makes a man a new creature.

Regeneration is the giving of a new nature, the nature of God. 2 Peter 1:4. It is the Holy Spirit who imparts this to us, makes us partakers of the divine nature. It is done through the Word. To put it in a word: The human heart is the soil, the preacher or teacher is the sower, the word of God is the seed, the Spirit of God quickens the seed, and the Divine nature is the result.

Not by works done in righteousness by ourselves but by his mercy we are saved. We can do no work of righteousness ourselves, nothing an unbeliever can do can satisfy God. Their righteousness is as filthy rags in His sight.

Analogy of Washing

Both Paul and John used the same analogy of washing. The picture of cleansing and water comes through. Beware of people who try to twist this into Baptismal regeneration, that you are saved by total immersion. Baptismal regeneration is not taught here. There are no sins washed away when you are baptised. It is a sign of something that has already happened to you. It is a picture or memorial. Paul continues with this concept in Titus 3, Ephesians 5:25-27, John 6:63.

These passages need to be tied together in your mind. The connection of water and regeneration is given in 1 John 5:5-6. Here the water is the Word of God and the spirit is the Holy Spirit. The work of regeneration involves the Word of God and the Holy Spirit. The two come together in a unique way in the life of the believer if they accept the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour. Regeneration takes place when the Spirit takes the Word and enlivens it in their life by grace into a relationship of son or daughter of God.

We are in error if we equate the filling with the baptism of the Spirit. It is clear from Scripture however that the baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at the point of salvation whilst the filling of the Holy Spirit occurs when there is no unconfessed sin in your life. This concept or confusion also occurs in the writings of many otherwise good bible teachers which allows for the infiltration of the Charismatics.

Confession

The Scripture commands you to be filled with the Holy Spirit. Whether you are filled with the Holy Spirit is up to you. If people believe that the Holy Spirit is in them He needs to be let loose in their lives. This is accomplished by confession of sins as per 1 John 1:9.
Most of the questions you will be asked in the ministry are to do with the people not knowing the meaning of the words they use such as regeneration, expiation, propitiation and the like. We should ask them what they mean by a term to ensure that they are aware of its true doctrinal meaning.

It depends whether you believe in a body soul and spirit or just body and soul and that you get a spirit at the point of salvation. Irrespective of the concept it is clear that at the point of salvation the believer's life is changed to such an extent that they can now understand spiritual phenomena. It is also clear that relationship with God is spiritual and can only be attained through rebirth. We receive a new nature, we have been reborn, we are re-created, we are resurrected, there are many implications to the act of regeneration.

We can have relationship with God, we are born again and will live eternally with the Lord. Our body however will fall apart but we have a resurrection body. We are regenerated for eternity. We should always give praise for the work of the Holy Spirit.

**Our New Nature**

We have a new nature which has the ability to obey God. We can produce righteousness and true holiness. We have taken off the old and put on the new. We are new creatures in Christ. We are challenged every day to live worthy of the gift that we have been given, the gift of eternal life.

If you recognise that everything you have as a believer is something you have received from God we can pray that the Lord will help us to live worthy of the so great salvation. If a person gave you everything you could not repay him. We have been given everything in Christ Jesus. Do we see our position in Christ in the way the Scriptures say it will be?. This is the gospel played out in a daily form in the believers life.

**DOCTRINES**

**REGENERATION: BORN AGAIN**

1. General Scripture - (John 3:5-8) ‘Ye must be born again’ (v7). You are born of the Spirit. (v8) We then become new creatures in Christ.  
2. Natural man cannot understand spiritual phenomenon (1 Corinthians 2:14). He lacks the ability to enter the Kingdom of God. (John 3:5). They are unable to please God. (Romans 8:7, 8)  
3. New birth is a creation of the Holy Spirit. (John 1:12, 2 Corinthians 5:17, Ephesians 2:10, 4:24). Through the Holy Spirit we become aware that we are joint heirs with Christ. (Romans 8:16, 17)  
4. The requirement for the new birth is belief on Christ, that He is crucified and risen. (John 1:12, 3:16-18,36). New birth occurs at the instant of belief.  
5. Through new birth (Regeneration) the believer lives in Christ, and Christ in the believer. (Galatians 2:20, Ephesians 2:10, 4:24, 1 Peter 1:23-25, 1 John 5:10-12).  
6. Once you are born you cannot be unborn.

**LESSON 24 - HOLY SPIRIT - INDWELLING AND SEALING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 24 | H.S Indwelling and Sealing [168] | Romans 8:9-11  
1 Corinthians 6:19-20  
2 Corinthians 5:5  
Ephesians 1:13, 14  
Ephesians 4:30 | Indwelling of Christ Seal |

**INTRODUCTION**

There are a number of ministries of the Holy Spirit which occur at the point of salvation. Two are the indwelling and sealing of the Holy Spirit. The first time this occurred was at Pentecost. John 14:16,17. At Pentecost uniquely the ministries of the Holy Spirit were set up, sealing, baptising, the giving of gifts, indwelling and regenerating. This occurred on people who had been believers for a number of years and therefore mixing their maturity with the new phenomena the effect was dramatic.

This combination of maturity and the gifts of the Holy Spirit does not occur now as these are given at the point of salvation when no spiritual growth has occurred. Nowadays until a person has grown they do not realise what gift they have been given by the Holy Spirit.
This is further evidenced by the fact that the apostle Paul warned against letting a new believer minister. It is also important to distinguish between the baptism, filling and sealing of the Holy Spirit.

Both Torrey and Martin Lloyd Jones combine and therefore confuse these characteristics of the Spirit. This not only opens the door to the extreme Pentecostal movement but invites it. You will have people asking for the Holy Spirit, praying to be filled rather than obeying the Word.

This is shown in Romans 8:9-11- which shows the indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit. This is the proof of the person being a believer. If you are not indwelt by the Holy Spirit you are not a believer. The Spirit allows you to deal with sin and is the certainty of resurrection.

Ministry of the Holy Spirit

In 2 Corinthians 5:5 the Spirit is called the earnest of our inheritance. Earnest money was a deposit on an item in the ancient world but unlike us nowadays when you put down earnest money you owned the item. It was a covenant and the item could never be lost.

1 Corinthians 6:19-20 relates to dealing with sin in your life. You body is the Temple of the Holy Spirit. Notice it is the temple which is a permanent structure and not the temporary tabernacle that is in view here.

The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit

The indwelling Spirit is a gift of God to all believers, a gift that is not earned or deserved. In Christ Jesus we are all recipients of the gift. This is pure grace as in sin none of us deserve anything.

1 Corinthians 2:14, Romans 8:9, Jude 19 show that if you do not have the Holy Spirit you are unsaved. It should be noted that sinning believers are continuously indwelt by the Holy Spirit. This fact is unlike the teaching of Arminius who said we could lose the Spirit and our salvation.

It is Permanent

Reviewing the sins of the Corinthians in 1 Corinthians it is hard to imagine a sin which they did not commit especially when you see of the believer who was committing incest with his mother in chapter 5. Many Pentecostals believe you are lost if you sin. The Keswick movement makes a lot of this as well. It is false. In addition you cannot grieve or quench the Spirit unless you are involved with the Spirit. The permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit ties in with the sealing of the Holy Spirit.

If you do not teach the quenching and grieving of the Holy Spirit you are going to lose the church to the Charismatics by their mixing of many scripture and concepts.

Some times during your Christian walk you are going to be aware of a lack of vigour in your life. It is because you have walked away from the Lord. Something has come between you and active living fellowship with the Lord. This is that quenching, and is remedied by confession of sin and obedience to the Word.

The answer to the problem is to deal with your sin and re-establish yourself with the Lord. If you do not know these doctrines however you are going to be easy prey to false doctrine. If I have sin in my life the Lord will not hear me is told to us in the Psalms. Lack of this knowledge will facilitate the Charismatic coming along and telling you that you have not got the Spirit and convince you that you need the baptism of the Holy Spirit. Many people will be looking for the dramatic evidence of the Spirit whereas they should be looking for the filling of the Spirit in their lives. John 16:8-11. We should examine ourselves and see what has come between us and the Lord.

Acts 5:32- isn’t obedience part of indwelling? - if you take the verse out of context it may seem that way. Who are being spoken to, it is the unbelievers, the Pharisees.

They also say that the Bible is full of the temporary empowerment of the Holy Spirit. This is true but it is all before Pentecost. In John 14:16 the Lord prophesied that such a condition would cease.

The Samaritans

An area of confusion occurs for some concerning the giving of the Spirit to the Samaritans, which appears to be both selective and subsequent to salvation. It has caused some people to go off on a tangent and seek a so called second blessing. The Samaritans were a special case where the Lord wanted to prove to them that their new Christian faith was not a rival to the church in Jerusalem. This reflected that the Jews and Samaritans were one in Christ and was thus delayed until the Jewish apostles were with them and did away with the possibility of there developing two churches rather than one.
When one was a young believer one was not aware of the ministry of the Holy Spirit in your life but as you grow you become aware of the power of the Spirit. This is not however a second blessing. It is maturity and should be every believer's experience.

You need good Bible teaching and proceed with your Christian life. As you mature you will be able to do more and more in your life. The laying on of hands was a picture of the delegation of authority. This was to show that they were to follow the apostles from Jerusalem from where the policy came.

What about the situation in Acts 19 - What does this passage show? As soon as they heard of the Lord Jesus Christ they were saved, baptised and received the Holy Spirit. The Apostles would spend hours with the new believers telling them about the Scriptures and soon after that they were baptised. In the early church there was no evidence for waiting a long time after salvation to be baptised.

The permanence of the indwelling of the Holy Spirit is seen in the sealing of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit enters the believer into union with Christ. That person is then God's and nothing will separate that person from Him.

A person who sins will lose their reward, function and joy and even be subject to the sin unto death but will never lose their salvation. People often look for excuses but people should always be aware of the obligation of a Spirit filled life.

Sealing of the Holy Spirit

All believers are sealed with the Holy Spirit Ephesians 1:13,14, 4:30 - the sealing is permanent until the day of redemption, until the Lord brings you home to glory.

Seals were a sign of nobility in the ancient world and showed ownership with security. A father and a son would have the same signet rings which would indicate ownership of an article which was sealed. God sets His seal on you. Once the mark of ownership is on you, you are His, and no one can change it - Romans 8:38-39. Your life is hid with Christ in God as you are sealed at the point of salvation Acts 2:38. The seal is unto the day of redemption Romans 8:23, Ephesians 4:30. We are God's responsibility.

Ramifications of the seal are security and purity, we should be stable as a believer and holy. There are many unstable people who are trapped by the Charismatics. You will also want to be pure, you will desire it. The world needs to see stable Christians. Pray for a steady and clear witness to your confused brethren in churches that teach things concerning the Spirit that make them unstable.

DOCTRINES

INDWELLING OF CHRIST

1. The prophecy of the indwelling of the Lord Jesus Christ. (John 14:18-20)
2. There is a distinction between the indwelling of the Lord Jesus Christ and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. (John 14:18-20)  
3. The Lord Jesus Christ indwells for fellowship (Galatians 2:20), and a sign of the believer's position. (Romans 8:10)
4. In contrast the Holy Spirit indwells to teach, guide, direct, empower and correct. (John 14:26, 16:8-15, Romans 8:11, 1 Corinthians 6:19-20)
5. The purpose of the indwelling is that the believer may grow in fellowship with the Lord, learning to know and love him more. (Colossians 1:27, Ephesians 3:17-19)
6. We fellowship with the Lord within as we allow the Holy Spirit to teach us through the Word. (John 6:63, 8:31-32, Colossians 3:16)
7. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is permanent even though He may be quenched or grieved, but the Lord Jesus Christ can be locked out of the soul by the presence of sin or a negative attitude towards the Word. (2 Corinthians 13:5)
8. When the Lord is locked out, the Holy Spirit convicts the believer, the believer is miserable, with the Lord knocking at the door for admission. (1 John 1:9, Revelation 3:19-20)

SEAL

A seal has a number of different implications:-

2. Identification. Ezekiel 9:4 - Use of the signet ring in 1 Kings 21:8; Esther 8:8-10
5. Glorification. Ephesians 4:30 - Example: Letters are stamped and sealed so as to arrive at their destination.
6. Preservation. Revelation 7:3 - Example: Locks on doors or the seal on the tomb of Christ.
7. Destination. Revelation 22:4

LESSON 25 - BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT
**NO** | **STUDY AND [TAPE]** | **TEXTS** | **TOPIC BOOK**
---|---|---|---

**INTRODUCTION**

In Ephesians 4:5 we are told of One Lord, One Faith One Baptism. This is not water baptism which is important but it is not the one that all believers share in. Many believers do not have the time or opportunity to be baptised in water. The one baptism we all share in is the Baptism of the Holy Spirit which marks the beginning of the believer's association with Christ.

The universality is given in 1 Corinthians 12:12,13. This event is common to all believers in the Church age. If you have not been baptised by the Holy Spirit you are not a believer. This is clearly seen in the Greek and it is therefore important to analyse it.

**Baptism - What is it?**

Baptizo means to baptise. It is in the aorist passive indicative, aorist means a point of time in the past, passive, we receive it at the point of salvation, indicative mood means it is a reality. You as a believer some time in the past received the baptism of the Holy Spirit, you did not earn it or deserve it, it was given to you. Nothing was done to receive it. It was grace all the way. There are no exceptions. Even the poorest believer has received the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. Some spoke in tongues, some did not thus then these two phenomena were not necessarily associated.

The meanings of "Baptizo" is to dip or immerse, to wash. However the primary meaning is to identify one object with another so that the first object is changed. A historical example was the baptising of the hunting spears of the Greek soldiers. In the day of Alexander the Great, before the army headed off towards modern Turkey, many of the Greek troops had not been in a battle. In order to enhance their performance the hunting spears which they took with them were dipped in a bucket of pigs blood in the belief that it changed the nature of the hunting spear into a warrior's spear.

By analogy once we were part of the world but the Holy Spirit so identified us with Christ that we were changed into part of His body. This shows how critical the Baptism of the Holy Spirit is.

**Definition**

The Baptism of the Holy Spirit is the work of the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation whereby He enters the believer into union with Christ, into the Church the Body of Christ. This gives you your identity as a Christian. I am a member of the church, I am a member of the Body of Christ. This is done so that our love relationship may grow with Him and in Him. This opens the channel of blessing for us because it relates us to His church, His Body on earth.

Your attitude to the Baptism of the Holy Spirit will determine your attitude to the local church. The local church is based on the reality of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. Most Pentecostals are trying to get their people baptised by the Holy Spirit whereas the Biblical teaching is that we have been baptised once and for all by the Holy Spirit into the church.

**Origin of the Church**

One of the main reasons for confusion in this area is because some people believe that the church began in Abraham's tent or with the ministry of John the Baptist. This makes it much more difficult to understand rather than believing that it started at Pentecost where the first Baptism of the Holy Spirit took place.

Baptism is often taken as a synonym to the filling of the Holy Spirit but this is associated with the ministry of regeneration in the church age. As a result we are special. Many of the problems that occur are because Christians do not understand just how special they are.

It is important not to study Acts by itself. At Pentecost everything happens at once and is therefore unique. They are sealed, indwelt, regenerated, baptised and given spiritual gifts as mature believers. The following day Peter is preaching a message. This is not a normal situation.

In Ephesians 5:18 we are told that as a Christian you should not get drunk, but be filled with the Spirit. This is a command, present passive imperative, you are commanded to let this happen to you habitually. A literal translation would be to keep on letting the Spirit fill you.

In 1 Corinthians 12:13, if you think that the Baptism and filling of the Spirit is the same, you have a problem as there is a contradiction in the passages reviewed. You only need to be once and for all baptised but you need to be habitually filled.
We need to deal with sin in our lives and let the Holy Spirit control us. The spear was only dipped in the blood once and this made it in the soldier's mind a battle spear forever. There is no command in the Scripture to be baptised by the Holy Spirit.

In Acts 1:5 - when did it occur in the person's life? This is ten days before the time when they are going to receive the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit had not baptised anyone before that and everyone was looking forward to the feast of Pentecost.

**Results of the Baptism of the Spirit**

Two results of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit - it joins us to the body of Christ with in 1 Corinthians 12:13 there being many varieties in the body. The unity is the baptism of the Spirit. It is only a relationship with the Lord that allows you to have a relationship with other believers. You are part of Him and therefore joined to other believers. This is our crucifixion with Christ. It also identifies us with the death, resurrection and glorification of the Lord. We are left on earth to learn more about what it means to be in union with Christ. If you are in an intimate relationship as this is you have a great responsibility attached.

Every relationship has responsibilities, husband and wife, parent and child. The responsibility for us in Christ is to be obedient. The Lord's responsibility is to keep us safe. We should also get to know and love Him more. This is going to modify how you think about the Lord. The result is that you should walk worthy according to your calling.

The filling of the Holy Spirit allows you to work and is the evidence of a past baptism of the Holy Spirit. Many Christians have wasted a lot of time trying to work up the baptism of the Holy Spirit. This hinders people. In the Charismatic movement there is a lot of emphasis on praise and worship but it is generally shallow. This is why you can have people heading up the praise the Lord television show and still be in sin. If you are going to deal with experiences and emotions you are not going to have the Spirit control your life. In you problems give thanks to the Lord.

**DOCTRINES**

**BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT** – see page 6 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**IN CHRIST** – see page 42 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**LESSON 26 - HOLY SPIRIT - FILLING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**INTRODUCTION**

In Ephesians 5:18 we are told "Be filled with the Spirit". This is in the present tense which means continuous action.

**DEFINITION** - It is the spiritual state where the Holy Spirit is fulfilling all that he came to do in the hearts and lives of the individual believer.

The filling of the Spirit did occur prior to Pentecost but it was limited and was observed only in a small number of individuals prior to the start of the Church

Since Pentecost however the Holy Spirit indwells all believers in New Testament times. Everybody therefore has the opportunity to be filled with the Spirit and can now conform to Ephesians 5:18.

**EFFECT OF THE FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**
There is an observable difference in the daily life and character of Christians who are filled with the Spirit. Unfortunately there are few who can be characterised in this way. This is based on the failure of man rather than the lack of provision by God.

With Satan so active in the world we are told to be filled with the Holy Spirit. This is very important on a moment by moment basis. You need to be spiritually led by God. If you can get your congregation to live under the control of the Holy Spirit you are going to have a wonderful church, active, blessed and very productive. If you are going to achieve this everything else will happen, you will never need to seek funds, there will be evangelism and spiritual growth, blessing and impact.

If you do not stress the Holy Spirit you will have a hymn singing social club. You will be counselling and have a mess on your hands which you will call a church. Without the dynamic power of the Holy Spirit in your church you will have to have all the gimmicks to get people to give.

It is important that people come to church to know the Lord without coercion. If you teach systematically, verse by verse stressing the filling of the Holy Spirit they will come freely. If they are not interested it is a sign that they are not filled with the Spirit. If the people do not come the pastor should look at himself as to whether he is teaching or not.

In the church you should refer to the filling of the Holy Spirit every week. The Holy Spirit is the dynamic of the Christian life. If you have not got the Spirit you are not a Christian. This topic and your attitude to it is going to determine how you are going to run your church.

The secret of church growth is the individual to pray the prayer "let there be a revival and let it start with me." You should walk with the Lord in the Spirit, study and teach the Word systematically. As you see people come alive you ask them to pray. Two or three people can change a church or a nation.

Filling of the Holy Spirit Contrasted with Spiritual Maturity.

The filling of the Holy Spirit can occur if you are mature or not. Maturity occurs as one spends a lot of time in the filling of the Holy Spirit. The filling of the Holy Spirit should be the normal Christian life. It is only in that state that you are going to grow spiritually. The longer and more often you are under the control of the Holy Spirit the quicker you will mature. The baby believer does not spend a lot of time working under the power of the Holy Spirit. Spirituality is therefore not the same as maturity. You are only spiritual if God rules in your life as He intended it to be. You are spiritual if there is no sin in your life.

Three Conditions for the Filling of the Spirit,

[a] Quench not the Spirit - 1 Thessalonians 5:19,
[b] Grieve not the Spirit - Ephesians 4:30,
[c] Walk in the Spirit - Galatians 5:16 and do not fulfil the lusts of the flesh.

Quench not the Spirit.

Do not put out the fire is the literal meaning from the Greek. Do not smother the Holy Spirit's work. There are three components to a fire, fuel, air and heat.

If you want to put the fire out you eliminate one of the three items, remove the fuel, air or heat and the fire will go out. A great example of a Christian getting cold is given by the ember that is taken from a glowing fire. As the ember is removed from the fire and laid aside it ceases to glow and becomes cold. It does not matter how strong a Christian you are, if you lose your ardour you will grow cold. Stay with the fire and do not quench the Spirit. Sometimes it gets tough in then Christian life but we must keep the heat on.

This can also happen if you have no fuel or wrong fuel. In John 14-16 the Lord says that the Holy Spirit will lead you into all truth. It is important to feed upon the Word of God and not people's experiences however moving they may be they are not fuel for the Holy Spirit they are fuel for your emotions. Only God's Word will strengthen you as a believer.

The third way is air, if you do not breathe you do not live. Inhale taking in the Word exhale letting God's Word work through you. After breathing in by means of a good message you breathe it out with a great hymn at the end of the service.

Paul says stir up the gift that is in you 2 Timothy 1:6 - keep the fires burning. Throw more fuel on the fire. You can be smothered by the cares of the world, concerns of family and friend or work pressure especially if you are surrounded by pagans all the time. Do not let yourself get smothered by the evil of the world.
Romans 12:1-2 shows that you have to commit yourself to your spiritual life. Present yourself a living sacrifice. Throw yourself into this life because it is important.

**Grieve not the Spirit** -

Ephesians 4:30 shows that you do this when you have sin in your life. You deal, with it quickly using 1 John 1:9. If you do not use that verse you will be subject to Hebrews 12:5-13 which gives divine discipline. You are either going to be living under the power of the Holy Spirit or under Divine discipline. You will be miserable because the Spirit is grieved, miserable because the Spirit is quenched, miserable because of divine discipline.

**Walk in the Spirit** -

The word walk means to advance in ranks, make use of the assets you have. Believe the Word, feed on it and apply it. The Christian life is difficult as we are in Satan's world and are surrounded by evil, the world, the flesh and the devil. If you do not walk in the Spirit you will be walking with the enemy. You are strong or beaten. You have to have the intestinal fortitude to fight, you have the equipment, use it or you will become a casualty. There is a battle being fought out there and the Lord wants winners. The Lord won on Calvary. You are in Him, you are a winner.

**Characteristics of the Filling of the Holy Spirit**

What are going to be the characteristics of Filling of the Holy Spirit?

[a] Christ likeness, the fruit of the Spirit Galatians 5:22-23. Do not be impressed by miracles and signs because some people are going to be told to depart from the Lord at the judgment because they are unbelievers even though they have done miracles in the Lord's name. - Matthew 7. A lot of people claim miracles. Even when the miracles were legitimate it was nothing to say apart from the fact that they had power. The question is whether the power is from God or not. It is the fruit and not the signs that are important, by their fruit you will know them.

[b] You will have an evangelistic involvement, if they have no desire for souls, if they are not involved in teaching God's Word there is something wrong.

[c] Praise, worship, thanksgiving and submissiveness Ephesians 5:18 ff- this shows the basis of submissiveness that Christians should be mutually submissive. The basis of submissiveness is the filling of the Holy Spirit in Ephesians 5:18. Once you are submissive one to another you can be submissive husbands and wives as you are in submission to the Spirit. We as ministers need to lead as examples.

**Characteristics of the Filling of the Spirit:**

[a] The Power of the Spirit

[b] Holiness of Life

[c] Ministries of the Spirit

[d] Teaching you wonderful things

[e] Guide into all things

[f] Assurance of Salvation

[g] True worship of the Lord.

[h] Good prayer fellowship.

The major problem in the church are Christians who have grown cold. If you get words of wisdom in a convoluted manner you know it is not of the Lord because the Lord is clear and succinct.

Most of the healing that take place in "healing" services are found to be psychological. If they are followed through medically they are shown not to be healings. Paul towards the end of his ministry was not able to heal. He also used the healing ministry to present the gospel. He did not heal for healing sake. He also saw a vision of heaven which he was told not to speak about and he kept silent on what he saw.

The Word of God is all important not the signs and miracles. The filling of the Holy Spirit is all important.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT: FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT** – see page 39 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]
LESSON 27 HOLY SPIRIT - OTHER MINISTRIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 27 | Holy Spirit – Other Ministries [191] | 1 John 2:26-28  
Romans 8:9-18  
Psalm 119:105  
Romans 8:26-28  
1 Corinthians 12:7-13 | H S – Comforter, Teacher Guidance Gifts – Spiritual Gifts |

The other ministries of the Holy Spirit comprise Giving of Spiritual Gifts, Teaching, Guidance, Assurance, and Prayer. When choosing friends and church officers we have to look for these things evident in their lives. Not all Christians can be trusted. Many are out of fellowship and carnal most of the time, and such believers are less trustworthy than an honest pagan.

1 Corinthians 3:11-15 shows that the only things worth doing are those done under the power of the Holy Spirit which produces what is called gold, silver and precious stones.

SPIRITUAL GIFTS

This happens at salvation. Most believers are unaware of the gift that the Holy Spirit has given them at the point of salvation as it needs maturity to discern it.

Many believers never know what gift the Holy Spirit has given them because they never reach maturity.

The word for spiritual gifts is charisma or grace gifts. It is a God given ability for service. A natural talent that one has as an unbeliever such as the ability to sing may be used but is not the spiritual gift which is bestowed at salvation. If you are a successful businessman it does not mean that you will be a great deacon, if you are a public speaker it does not mean that you will be a great pastor or should be a pastor at all. If you have not been given the gift of pastor or teacher you are not a pastor or teacher.

If a person has a gift they need to be checked against the Scriptures to see if they conform to the requirements such as in the Pastorals. The Lord can use people irrespective of their natural talents. A good example is Moses who had a stutter. He was not a gifted public speaker but he became the pastor of Israel. There is danger in the ministry to have a person with great natural ability in the wrong position in the church and not walking in the spirit. Many of the liberals come from this background.

In 1 Corinthians 12 it is clear from verses 11-13 that no one should ask for gifts from the Holy Spirit as the Spirit sovereignly gives as He wills. The Spirit decides what gifts are needed. He did it at the point of salvation so it is too late to ask. You do not ask for a gift, if you do it is no longer a gift. The Holy Spirit looking down the corridors of time knew precisely what your gift would be and how you would use it.

The whole Pentecostal movement is based on asking for the gifts of the Spirit such as the gift of tongues. Every believer receives at least one gift. Every gift is necessary for the church to function. The Holy Spirit decides what gifts are needed, in what mix so that a church can function.

If you have ten people in your church you have all the gifts that are needed. You just need to have the people in the church filled with the Spirit to function. Those who use their spiritual gifts under the power of the Holy Spirit are satisfied.

In a number of areas all believers are told to function. For instance we are all told to witness but there is a gift of evangelism which will allow a special ability in this area. We are all told to give and pray but there are gifts to give a person a special ministry in that area.

1 Corinthians 14 says that the congregation should desire the gifts with communication benefits because it is those which allow people to know more about the Lord and grow. The word desire is in the third person plural so that it is the whole congregation should desire this and not an individual.

In this chapter Paul made it clear that he was trying to curb the use of tongues in the Corinthian church and promote the gift of preaching and teaching.
TEACHING MINISTRY

1 John 2:26-28 is a commentary on John 16 which refers to the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit. It is important to note that the Apostle John ends this passage with the importance of abiding in Christ. We have to use 1 John 1:9.

You do not need to be taught as you have a teacher inside you who is going to lead you into all truth. There is no lie in the Spirit's work. However there are seducers about. This is the point that John is bringing into focus. If you are not being taught by the Holy Spirit you are being taught by the other side and receiving worldliness or human viewpoint. They are fooled about what is happening and are led away from the truth.

John is not deprecating human teachers but saying that the Holy Spirit is in you and needs to be in control if you are going to understand spiritual things. John, for instance, was communicating the truth to them as he was given the truth by the Holy Spirit. Man is the means of communication, the Holy Spirit is the dynamic force involved in the teaching. When you go out to teach God's Word in your own strength you will fail because it is you rather than the Holy Spirit.

GUIDANCE

This is one of the more difficult ministries. You will have people coming to you in the ministry seeking guidance as to what God wants them to do from day to day, seeking Divine guidance.

Guidance does not come out of a vacuum, guidance comes out of a context. Guidance depends on the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit, fellowship of the Lord Jesus Christ and your own spiritual growth. In Romans 8:9 -18 we are told that we are led by the Spirit of God and are the sons of God. If you do not deal with sin in your life you cannot receive guidance from the Holy Spirit. Guidance therefore depends on fellowship.

Being led by the Holy Spirit is one of the signs of being a child of God. You can be led in two ways, by the ear like a bad schoolboy as per Hebrews 12, or led by the eye and hearing like a good student with a mature attitude. You have to know the Lord Jesus Christ so well that you know His policy. When your mind is saturated with doctrine you are looking in the eye of the Lord. Every decision you make is therefore made in the light of eternity. It is the closeness of your fellowship as to how well you are going to be guided. We have to ask what is the Lord's policy in this matter and what is important, what shall I do making a decision on that basis.

In Psalm 119:105 we have the Hebrew word for light which is the word for little light like a torch rather than the sun. We therefore have sufficient light to see the next step but not a clear view miles ahead. You only see what you need to see but need to be aware that He who provides the light knows the complete picture. Do not expect there to be a fantastic vision of the future. While Paul knew that the Lord wanted him to go west there is nothing to say that he knew well in advance what the Lord wanted him to do. Paul did not know what was going to happen to him in five years time, neither do we.

It did not worry Paul and it should not worry you. The Lord will show you what you need to know when you need to know it. Your life is in the Lord's plan and it is His timing that counts. If you are walking with Him you will be not stumble. You must be willing to be guided if you are to progress in the Christian life.

In Acts 11 guidance to Peter was through prayer in v 5, by thought, the Word of God and providential circumstances v 10-11, the filling of the Spirit v 12, fellowship with others v 13-14.

ASSURANCE

This is not something that can be separated from the other ministries of the Holy Spirit - Romans 8:16. When the Holy Spirit guides you, you will have assurance and comfort within. This confidence grows as you mature in the Christian life.

The normal worry of the young believer is whether you are saved or not. As a mature Christian however this is not a problem as you can look back on the performance of God in your life and His proven faithfulness. All the ministries of the Holy Spirit are real in the life.

Once you have been a Christian for a long time and have experienced not only the effect of the Holy Spirit but the convicting ministry when you have been out of fellowship you know you are saved and saved on a permanent basis.

Many of the Pentecostals have a false system where they say that they will give you assurance of salvation. They invite you to have a person lay hands on you and you “speak in tongues” indicating that you are saved.

You can have that or the real thing that is based on fellowship and the Holy Spirit fellowshipping with yours. You can be sick, depressed or in pain but you know you are in a relationship with then Lord Jesus Christ because he is real and active in your life. Assurance can also be seen in 2 Timothy 1:12 where Paul, just before his death, says that he is absolutely persuaded that God is able to keep him. This is the assurance that people should have facing death. You only have it if you are fellowshipping with the Lord and walking with him.
Dying grace is also a feature of this. The Lord provides assurance as you go through the valley of the shadow of death. One day we will all walk through the valley of the shadow of death, you need to walk through it in fellowship and you need to have walked in fellowship for years before. You can not turn it on like the “tongues”. When you are under pressure you cannot produce an emotional action and this is why many Charismatics crack up under pressure which is a very bad witness to unbelievers who then mock the gospel and remain in unbelief.

**PRAYER**

We see the Holy Spirit assisting us in our prayer life in Romans 8:26-7. This is obviously not the gift of tongues as it cannot be uttered. When you are going through things too deep for words the Spirit is praying for you. Sometimes you get to a situation where you cannot pray and you have to leave it to the Lord, the Spirit will pray for you. The Spirit never ceases to make intercession for us. We also have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the righteous. 1 John 2:1-2

**DOCTRINES**

**GUIDANCE: THE WILL OF GOD**

1. Three categories of will in history  
   a) Divine will (sovereignty)  
   b) Angelic will.  
   c) Human will.  
2. Main areas of the will of God (1 John 3:23)  
   a) For the unbeliever - salvation (2 Peter 3:9)  
   b) For the believer - spirituality (Ephesians 5:18)  
3. Christ has free will (Matthew 26:42, Hebrews 10:7, 9)  
   a) No free will in mankind would imply no free will in Christ.  
   b) The basic principles of divine guidance however is based on the fact that man possesses free will to choose for or against God.  
4. Type of will of God as related to the human race (e.g. Balaam)  
   b) Permissive (Numbers 22:20) - What God allows  
   c) Overruling (Numbers 23) - When God overrules  
5. Principles of Guidance  
   a) Knowledge of biblical principles in the believer (Psalm 32:8, Proverbs 3:1-6, Isaiah 58:11, Romans 12:2)  
   b) Surrender and filling of the Holy Spirit (Romans 6:13, Romans 12:1-2, Ephesians 5:17-18, 1 John 1:9)  
   c) Growth - to eat meat and not rely on milk (1 Corinthians 3:1-4)  
6. Categories of the will of God  
   a) Viewpoint will of God - What does He want me to think?  
   b) Operational will of God - What does He want me to do?  
   c) Geographical will of God - Where does He want me to be?  
7. An example of the will of God (Acts 11) - the Guidance of Peter  
   a) Guidance through prayer (vs 5)  
   b) Guidance through the mind (vs 6)  
   c) Guidance through the word (vs 7-10)  
   d) Guidance through providential circumstances (vs 11)  
   e) Guidance through the filling of the Spirit (vs 12)  
   f) Guidance through fellowship and comparison of data (vs 13-15)  
   g) Guidance through remembering Scripture (vs 16)  

**HOLY SPIRIT: COMFORTER** – see page 40 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**HOLY SPIRIT: TEACHER** – see page 40 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**GIFTS: SPIRITUAL GIFTS** – see page 34 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**SECTION E - AGES OF WORLD HISTORY**

**LESSON 28 - DISPENSATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Dispensations[199]</td>
<td>Ephesians 3:1-5</td>
<td>Dispensations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition
A dispensation is a period of world history from God's viewpoint. It is a period of time within human history during which God's dealings with man has significant differences compared with other times.

This is a subject which generates a lot of heat from reformed theological areas. Because it generates heat a lot of believers avoid it, but that is not the biblical way; we are to study honestly the whole counsel of God's word and avoid nothing. The subject is a biblical subject as shown in Ephesians. What we need to do is to see what God reveals about the subject.

The word dispensation is used because it is the English translation of the Greek word "oikonomonia" which means a period of administration or stewardship. It is firstly a time when a group or a person is put in charge of things in God's economy so that the portfolio is passed from one person to another from time to time.

A concept of a dispensation is never to be forced on history. The Scriptures show where the divisions come, we should not make our own divisions God makes the distinction, man recognises them.

It is secondly a spiritual category not a racial, political or social one. In the middle of the Jewish dispensation, half way between David and the Cross we have the age of the Gentiles beginning, a new political phenomena but the dispensation remains the same.

Stewardship
In every part of history there are a group of people who are responsible to God for his Word. These are those who are carrying the torch of doctrine. This torch comes from Israel to the Church and eventually back to Israel again.

There are a number of things that do not change however, salvation being one - by grace through faith, this was the same for Adam and is still the same today. The way we express our faith has changed as we no longer cut lamb's throats on the altar in our churches. There is a different way as we see that Christ was the lamb that died once and for all for our sins.

In Israel the believers grew through the law, sacrifices and the celebrating of the holy days whereas we grow by the taking in of Bible doctrine and growing in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ given under the power of the Holy Spirit.

Major changes have occurred from the Patriarch to the Law at Sinai with the Law giving way to the Church at Pentecost. The family altar was changed to the nationals altar at Sinai with a specialised priesthood, a specialised tabernacle and law that complemented it. These are important milestones in human history and can mark changes in dispensations.

If you ignore this you are robbing yourself of a major tool in Bible study. Unless you see the changes that have occurred you are not going to be able to rightly divide the Word of Truth. In the reformed camp they deny dispensations as a theology but they practice it in their services.

God's plan has unfolded in stages. Dispensationalists who are Biblical do not cut out passages from the Bible and throw them away. It is a matter of ascertaining where we are in relation to this unfolding plan. Not all practices are legitimate today. For instance if you applied Leviticus 2 to today you would build an altar and start cutting lamb's throats. The reason we do not do that nowadays is because we are living in the age after Pentecost. A new age has dawned with new methods.

Each epoch or dispensation has a different test. In every period of history man is found wanting whether it is perfect environment or not. In all the areas there are tests that men fail. In the garden it was the tree, in the Age of Israel it was the law, during the Church Age it is the Cross.

It is essential that we orientate ourselves to our age in history. It is important to understand that history has a termination point and is going to end in due course. Everything is part of God's plan which is going somewhere. You cannot read Genesis through Revelation without the idea that God has a plan which is going to work out.

By knowing your area in history you know where you stand and where others in the past stand. You can also be aware of the spiritual climate in which you live. Since the Cross there has been an increase in Satanic activity and unless you understand the assets that you have and the promises that have been given to you in your age/dispensation of the church, you are going to be a casualty in the angelic conflict.

When you realise where you are and then go back into previous dispensations and see how it was for people in those times you will start to become a theologian. In the Roman Catholic Church at the time of Galileo when he said that the earth was not the centre of the universe they rejected it because they thought of themselves as more important than they really were. There are some theological systems that magnify themselves. With dispensations however it will put you in your place.

We are royal priests and members of the royal family of God. We are not the be all and the end all but we are the climax of history. There needs to be right orientation towards believers in past history and to those in the future. True theology should make you humble and thankful This is the difference between theology in Spirit and in truth and the theology from books and manuscripts. Biblical theology will tend towards worship and not divisive arguments.

Some Christians claim promises which they have no right to claim. For example the Afrikaner claim to South Africa was the misapplication of the conquest of Canaan by Joshua. As they crossed the Orange River they believed that they were crossing the Jordan and they claimed the land and killed the Canaanites who were in the form of the black inhabitants. This was the
theological premise which created the Orange Free State and the Transvaal.

This was a false application of a passage of Scripture which was for Israelites and not for members of the Church. As another example there were things that Noah was told to apply which are still applicable today whilst there are some that are not. The altar and sacrifice are not but meat eating is. Learning to make the right distinctions and applications in accord with your place in God's unfolding drama of redemption is what theology is all about.

Both the hyper dispensationalist and the non dispensationalist wrongly divide the word of truth and Satan tries to get people of this narrow road to the truth.

The Three principles of Biblical Dispensational application,

[a] The Principle of literal interpretation - where the Lord chose to speak to us using language which should be interpreted using the normal standards of grammar.

[b] A belief in progressive revelation over the ages unfolding more and more details and completing his written revelation when John laid down his pen on Patmos in AD 96.

[c] Supercension where the later revelation in many ways supersedes those things that were before.

There is a trilogy in Galatians, Romans and Hebrews, that explains the shift from the Mosaic Law to the new dispensation. The Mosaic Law was superseded by the law of the spirit of life in Christ Jesus. Previous instructions may not necessarily apply in the following period. As a believer in the Church Age If you are living at a level lower than what is required you are legalistic and living out of step with the time in which you should be living.

The estimate of the number of dispensations into which the Bible is divided vary from 5 to 8. Dispensations are particularly important with your prophetic view. If you know what has happened in the past it gives you a much better appreciation of what is going to happen in the future. If you know what God has done in the past you can be confident of what he will do in the future.

Once you have, from scripture, seen what dispensations means to you you will tend to find that you have a different view of prophecy. From this study you will get a pre Millennial, pre Tribulational viewpoint.

DOCTRINES

DISPENSATIONS - see page 24 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 29 - THE COVENANTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

Covenants are contracts between God and man. There are eight contracts or covenants which have been progressively revealed from the Garden of Eden to after the Cross. Covenants characterise the dispensations and are the groundwork for them.

Dispensations are progressive and unfold in stages. Different dispensations, different covenants, different ritual. The only ritual we have in our dispensation is the Lord's Table and Baptism. In other periods of history there have been different ritual and different operating procedures for faith to be lived/expressed.

In Galatians 4:21 - 5:21 we see that it is important to get your spiritual life and your witness in the place that it should be. The major attack of the enemy is not getting us to commit gross sin but getting you off the track; to make you live in a way that is not right for your period of history. Believers do not need Satan's help to sin, they all have Old Sin Natures.

Where Satan really attacks is trying to get you to put into place those things that do not apply and put aside those things that do. The Galatians had returned under an old dispensation which had ceased. They were under a new dispensation and a new covenant in place. They were however going back and starting to live under the Mosaic covenant again. Paul is saying here that they had been born under an old dispensation that had passed away. You were like Hagar in bondage as slaves but now you are sons. Do not go back to the old stand fast in the area where Christ has set you free.

This is a problem that continues because people will not differentiate between the dispensations and covenants and which do apply. Old Testament spirituality depended on the law whilst Church age spirituality has depended in walking in the Spirit and
obeying the commands that come through the Spirit.

Before Pentecost Moses was the one you followed, since Pentecost it is the Spirit which has been the guide. You need to get into the change and not go back into something that no longer applies.

God's eternal plan is revealed in Scripture and centres in solemn covenants and promises which God has made. At least eight covenants are recorded most of them being in the form of a declaration of divine purpose which will certainly be fulfilled. Here we are discussing the revelation of God's plan for mankind. It is not only to do with our salvation but pre-eminently His glory. History is the fulfillment of the eternal purpose of God.

Biblical Covenants

With the Biblical Covenants you have conditional and unconditional covenants. Conditional covenants are those in which God's action is in response to those actions of man. It guarantees that God will do His part once man's part has been done. If the human part is not fulfilled he is not obliged to fulfill His part of it. The conditional covenants are the Edenic and Mosiac covenant.

Unconditional Covenants

There are six unconditional covenants which are dependent on God's character alone and will be fulfilled.

The Eight Biblical Covenants

[a] Edenic - Genesis 1:26-31, 2:16-17 - Conditional covenant with Adam. He had the responsibility to tend the garden and not eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Man failed and he was removed from the garden of Eden. At the time he ate of the tree he died spiritually.

[b] Adamic Covenant - Genesis 3:16-19 - an unconditional covenant where God declares what his lot is going to be because of sin. We are still under the Adamic covenant and all through history man will be as it expresses and makes clear that the wages of sin is death. We are sinners and we need a Saviour. Others things that make this clear are: God tells Adam that he is going to die and earn bread by the sweat of his brow, and that humans will also have problems in childbirth. We also now have lordship of male over female, and we have basic authority systems in society itself.

[c] Noahic - Genesis 9:1-18 - an unconditional covenant that introduces new principles in human government to curb sin. This can be classified as the post diluvian covenant, which we are also still under. This is where you take vegetarians who do not believe that Christians should eat meat. They would have been correct before the Flood but not after. Capital punishment is included as well.

[d] Abrahamic - Genesis 12:1-4, 13:14-17, 15:1-7, 17:1-8 - an unconditional covenant. This is one of the great revelations of God considering history and its profound prophecies. Regarding posterity he will have many sons. He is also promised a great nation and a promise of spiritual blessing which will come through his line.

[e] Mosaic covenant - Exodus 20:1-31:18 - Conditional covenant given through Moses for the children of Israel. If Israel obeyed they were blessed if not they were disciplined.

[f] Palestinian Covenant - Deuteronomy 30:1-10 - An unconditional covenant dealing with the final position of Israel in the land. This has still to be fulfilled and will be during the Millennium. It is belief in this which is causing Israel to adopt the political posture that it does at this time.

[g] Davidic Covenant - 2 Samuel 7:4-16, 1 Chronicles 17:3-15 - An unconditional covenant which promised David a ruler who would reign over the Jews forever. This ties in with the position of the Lord Jesus Christ in the Millennium and the eternal kingdom.

If you get the biblical covenants in your mind clearly you will understand prophecy better. The prophecy given by God always fit in with the covenants.

[h] The New Covenant - Jeremiah 31:31-33 These are two unconditional covenants one to Israel and the other to the Church. There could therefore be said to be nine biblical covenants. The one to Israel will be fulfilled in the Millennium. - Jeremiah 31 The New Testament part of the New Covenant deals with the Church and is given in Matthew 26:26-29, Mark 14:22-24, Luke22:19-20, 1 Corinthians 11:23-34. Both sides of this covenant come from the sacrifice of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Theological Covenants

These are two conservative schools of the interpretation of these covenants, or theological systems, the dispensational and the covenant theologians. We have to be careful that we do not get involved in "covenant theology" which leaves other things obscured because you make such a big thing of covenants.
In defining the eternal purpose of God, these theologians have advanced the theory that it is God's central purpose to save the elect, those chosen for salvation from eternity past. Accordingly they view history as primarily the outworking of God's plan of salvation. In developing this doctrine they have expounded three basic theological covenants. The basis of their theological covenant system is election, whereby the sovereign grace of God and all of world history is seen as the working out of God's plan to save only some.

Their three covenants are:

[a] A covenant of works, which is said to have been made with Adam where Adam obeyed and did what God said.

[b] A covenant was made between God the Father and God the Son in relation to the salvation of man in eternity past, a covenant of redemption. This is known as divine decrees.

[c] The covenant of grace in salvation with Jesus Christ as mediator.

While these concepts have truth in them it is not the salvation of the elect souls which is the ultimate purpose of God's plan although obviously it is a vital area. The ultimate purpose of the plan of God is to show His glory.

He does this not only by saving men but also by his relationship to and what he does with, Israel, the Church and the Gentiles in history. The doctrine of election and predestination is the force behind covenant theology; these are reviewed from a biblical perspective below. Dispensational theology, however stresses as central the doctrine of the Character of God, and identifies the concept that God is not only sovereign but has other equally important characteristics. Rather than the three covenants of the other group the dispensational theologian identifies the eight covenants, which do give the essential purposes of God and includes the plan of salvation.

The Basis of Covenant Theology - Covenant theology is the basis of the Dutch reformed theology as well as some of the Baptists. They stand on the basis of the fifteenth and sixteenth century reformers who did truly understood grace, but they got sidetracked by their views of election.

It was the rediscovery of teaching of the books of Galatians and Romans (delete)which started the Reformation. The Reformers emphasised the covenants and built a system on them but they did not discern the dispensations. Covenant theology has tended to go in two directions; it goes towards legalism or liberalism. Most of the denominations which have gone into liberalism have been those who have been based on covenant theology or five point Calvinism. A prime example of this is the Presbyterian church.

Calvinism will tend to make you a sceptic or a hard legalist if really understood. We are reminded of the Lord's words, "By their fruits you shall know them" (Matthew 7:15-23). If their life is not manifesting the fruit of the Spirit it is likely that the person is not theologically correct.

The Dispensational theologian will agree that there are covenants and that they are important and that they are working out in history but that the Covenant theologians do not go far enough.

The New Age Movement

Another misuse of the covenants albeit probably not a conscious one is made by the new age movement. They have the concept that if we eat vegetarian food and we think the right things we will eliminate war, evil and people will live in harmony. This is a Satanic lie. They think that they can get back to the Edenic covenant which was cancelled when man sinned. Before we criticise them in isolation we need to be reminded that it is just as evil to be a legalist and to live under the Mosaic law which has been fulfilled.

We are under the Adamic covenant. You are a sinner and need a Saviour. When man sinned and he fell he was removed from the garden of Eden. It is important to distinguish the covenants. Vegetarian Christians are mixed up as they do not understand which covenant they are in. It is very important for people to know where they stand in relation to the dispensations and covenants.

DOCTRINES

COVENANTS - see page 17 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

SECTION F – ANGELOLOGY AND SATANOLOGY
LESSON 30 - ANGELS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

We are not alone we have other creatures who are rarely seen called angels. Who are they? what is their destiny? How do they relate to us. This is a very important study. It is one of the more difficult ones because of its reflection on Satan, and many students find when they study him they have troubles!

Many seminaries do not cover this at all. They believe in flying saucers but do not believe in angels at all. However this is countered by an emerging demonstration of the work of the operative fallen angels called demons.

The angelic conflict is something in which we are involved, and to fight well in our age so that we have an impact for our Lord we must know our enemy fully. This is the power struggle between God and Satan, which God is going to win, that began before the creation of man. If you are a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ it is important that you know where you stand.

There is an increasing awareness of another dimension which has been brought forward by the New Age Movement and by the Spielberg movies. From Star Wars and the like the theology of many unbelievers takes a form that some sort of force is with them, a force of good. There is also a great expectation by a large number of unbelievers of extra terrestrials making contact with humanity. We must counter this new age belief with the biblical truth.

We look here at angelology, demonology and eschatology. What we see on the move around us in the changing belief systems of our neighbours is a significant trend. Satan has a propaganda machine going at the moment and they are preparing the world for something. In this regard it is important to teach proper biblical eschatology or prophecy.

This area of theology will also be attacked by covenant theologians who will look down on it and sadly in their beliefs will tend towards liberalism. While people may deny angels the bible makes it clear by their reported activity that they exist.

BIBLICAL STATEMENTS ON THE EXISTENCE OF ANGELS

There are over 300 verses in the Scriptures that refer to angels in 34 separate books ranging from Genesis to Revelation. There are 65 references to angels in Revelation alone and 100 in the Old Testament. If you believe in the Scripture you have to believe in angels as a creature. Do not take your theology from the painter Rubens, who showed angels as fat pink babies with wings, or from your own cultures pictures of them, but take your views from the bible and let it correct your views.

Some of the angels are seen helping the servants of the Lord, opening prison doors. How commentators deal with angels often will give you an indication as to what viewpoint they have. A good verse to check out commentators on is Matthew 22:30. If you believe the Lord Jesus Christ is the God man, he will not tell you anything false. He refers to something that must be true, that the angels neither marry or are given in marriage. The Lord believes in them do you?

GREEK AND HEBREW NAMES

Angels is from the Greek word "aggelos" which means messenger. In the Hebrew it is "Malak", meaning my messenger from which the word Malachi is formed. In the Scriptures the angel or messengers can be either human or angels. It is used for people both live and dead.

OLD TESTAMENT

The Old Testament which speaks of angels over 100 times always presents them as real creatures. In the 34 occurrences of angels in the Torah they do things in character with their service as messengers.

As examples Abraham met and ate with angels Genesis 18, an angel executed judgement on Israel 2 Samuel 24:16, Isaiah refers to a seraphim, Isaiah 6:2, Ezekiel to a cherubim Ezekiel 10:1-3, Daniel mentions Gabriel 9:20-27, and Michael 10:13, 12:1, Zechariah mentions angels as agents of God [chapter 1] and in the Psalms 34:7, 91:11, 103:20 they are shown as the servants of God.

NEW TESTAMENT

The New Testament speaks of angels some 165 times with 65 references in the Book of the Revelation alone. This is...
more than any other book in the Bible.


In the book of Acts we have them opening prison doors 5:19, 12:5-11, directing Philip and Cornelius in ministry 8:26, 10:1-7, encouraging Paul during a storm on his voyage to Rome. 27:23-25

There is also clear references to angels in the writings of Paul -Galatians 3:19, 1 Timothy 5:21 the writer to the Hebrews 1:4, Peter 1 Peter 1:12 and in Jude 6

THE TEACHINGS OF CHRIST

Angels were present to assist Jesus Christ after his temptation in the wilderness Matthew 4. He taught that human beings after the resurrection would, like the angels not procreate. Matthew 22:30, that they would separate the good and wicked Matthew 13:39 and will accompany the Lord Jesus Christ at the Second Advent Matthew 25:31.

Even with this overwhelming Biblical evidence many different commentators will adopt the concepts that Jesus Christ [a] was accommodating people's primitive beliefs, [b] was a liar, [c] really did not know [d] was telling the truth, which of course is the fact of the matter.

It is of note that some otherwise reasonably good commentators will take one or other of the above four concepts. It really separates good commentators from the other ones.

ARE ANGELS RELEVANT TODAY?

Are the angels still active? Is it important for us to study them? Yes. With the media you see modern man's fixation with super creatures so it is important to study the real super creatures.

1 Corinthians 4:9 - Paul says we are on the stage, we are a spectacle for men and angels. Both are watching us. 1 Peter 1:10-12 mentions these things with which we are involved the angels are interested in and are getting to know things through us. The angels are enthusiastically interested in all the features of God's plan. As Peter and Paul are discovering things so are the angels.

DOCTRINES

ANGELS - see page 3 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 31 - ANGELS [continued]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Angels and their Role [continued] [211]</td>
<td>1 Corinthians 6:1-6 Hebrews 1:13,14 Ephesians 3:8-13 Matthew 4:8-11</td>
<td>Angelic Conflict</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

In 1 Corinthians 6 Paul is criticising the Corinthians for taking each other to court and appearing before pagan judges. The problems should be settled within a church. In this passage he says that we are going to judge angels. Even the least astute of you in Christ will be able to judge between you. You need a Spirit filled judge. In the end time you are going to judge the world and angels.

ELECT AND FALLEN ANGELS

The elect angels take great interest in you and are cheering you along, the fallen angels also take interest in you.
because one day you will be judging them. This makes it very clear why demons and Satan are so antagonistic to believers as they know in the end that you are going to deal with them. Satan walks around like a roaring lion seeking whom he can devour. Lions only attack the sick or weak. Lions sit and wait for hours and will pick the weakest.

The name angel means that the individual is related to God's plan. God has a plan and these creatures are related to a part in it. They are keen spectators as shown in Hebrews 1. They are not only spectators but also actively involved in the believer's life. This is a passage on guardian angels Hebrews 1:5. We have the superiority of the Lord through our unity with Christ over the angelic realm.

GUARDIAN ANGELS

We are in union with Christ therefore we are positionally superior to the angels. Physically they are superior to us at this time and are more powerful.

That we are heirs of salvation is shown in many passages, the angels are under His orders and when a person believes in the Lord Jesus Christ, it would appear from the text that the Lord allocates one angel to that individual as their guardian angel.

We therefore have a super creature who is responsible for controlling the unseen spiritual environment about us and making sure that we are protected in areas which we may not recognise as dangerous. We should remember that because the Holy Spirit is in you and we are in Christ and we have a guardian angel we are very well protected as believers.

Angels can materialise and disappear, they have powers to work miracles and are from a different dimension. We in union with Christ are superior to them, that is why they serve us. In Christ we are higher than the angels. He is seated at the right hand of the Father an honour never accorded an angel.

We therefore in union with Christ have superior spiritual resources to Satan, Michael and Gabriel. You are therefore in an unassailable position if you are living as a believer should aware of your position in Christ. Are you as a spiritual believer in any danger from Satan? The answer is no.

Knowing where you stand causes us to appreciate the angelic conflict. If you do not understand this you, possibly are a sitting duck.

ANGELS AND GOD

Angels are created and are therefore not in any way equal to God. There is not ,the Asian concept of Ying and yang with both equal. There is no possibility of Satan winning because of this. Angels do not procreate, there are not little angels or cherubs as we see in some European paintings.

Genesis 6 and Jude 6 show that they had, prior to the Flood, relationship with human women by being involved with sexual immorality. Those that did were chained up until the end for judgement. In the angelic realm however they do not procreate. From the reading of Scripture it would appear that all angels appear as males. Therefore the number of angels that were originally created exist today. They existed before the creation of the world as shown in Job 38:7.

The reason that man was made a little lower than the angels is related to the their fall and their destiny. They are watching us because their fate is being played out by us, if we as inferior creatures accept the Lord then God is just and right in judging those that fell with Satan.

It appears that Satan argued with God after he fell, saying that he couldn't help but to sin and rebel, for that was the way God made him. Man, as a lower being becomes the test case. The salvation of men proves Satan's argument wrong, and seals his doom, that is one reason why he hates everyone who believes in the Lord, for their volition proves his evil in his rebellion.

They were created holy and some fell. They have emotion intelligence and will. These creature are created superior to man, they know the Scriptures more and as they have existed for millennia are able to predict what man is going to do but cannot read men's minds. Satan does not know what you are thinking but God of course can.

Though there are similarities between angels and deity and angels and men, angels are a distinct class of beings. Like deity they do not die, like deity they are superior to men but they are not omnipotent.

Like both God and man they have personalities. They are spirit beings but not omnipresent. Man is physical and spiritual. Angels do not procreate as man does. Man is a little lower than the angels unless he is in union with Christ when he becomes higher than the angels. In union with Christ man is in a position to judge angels.
DEMON POSSESSION

The whole area of demon possession is by invitation of the person involved only. Only unbelievers can be demon possessed and their possession is limited by their will. How can they get rid of the demons? By bowing before the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour. This is demonstrated by the man with a thousand demons living amongst the Gadarenes who even though his voice was controlled was able to show his attitude to Jesus by falling at His feet.

If you are dealing with a demoniac you talk to the person and preach the gospel rather than exorcise them. He may only be able to throw himself at your feet. Do not touch demon possessed people. Do not take on Satan head on. You need to recognise your position, recognise the unbeliever and give him the answer to his problem which is the gospel.

Much of the trouble with the Charismatic movement is that many are pretend believers, they speak in tongues, it can be of the evil one. Satan is a great counterfeiter, and may counterfeit all the biblical gifts and if people seek power and through pride want great gifts Satan is ever ready to provide an alternative to the bible while pretending it is Christian.

It is real, it is something that needs to be understood. No one has the power of exorcism. It is the Holy Spirit that takes on evil. When they have been delivered they need counseling for a significant period to get them going on the right track.

These are unbelievers who have gone to the pits and need to get stabilised, at the root of their problem is often pride and other sin patterns that need to be broken in the power of the Holy Spirit and with steady obedience to the bible over time. It is important to be stabilised and know your position in Christ.

CLASSES OF ANGELS

There are seven classes of elect angels

[a] Michael - the archangel
[c] Elect Angels - 1 Timothy 5:21
[d] Principalities and Powers which seem to be both elect and fallen. There is an incessant warfare between the elect and fallen angels. These are different ranks of angels showing that there is organisation in the angelic realm.
[e] Cherubim - these are the defenders of the holiness of God.
[f] Seraphim - in Isaiah with a function which appears to be a worship function.
[g] The Angel of Jehovah which is the preincarnate Lord Jesus Christ.

CATEGORIES OF FALLEN ANGELS

There are two categories of fallen angels -

[a] Those that are free commonly called demons
[b] Those that are bound and are in a compartment of Hades called Tartarus. These are mentioned in Jude and 2 Peter and are there because of offences in the past.

The organisation of angels is given in Ephesians 3:8-10. Paul is saying here that everything that has been revealed in the way of doctrine in the Church is to teach principalities and powers in heavenly places. Both the elect and the fallen angels are very interested in everything that Paul is communicating is a challenge to believers and a statement of fact as well. They are not all knowing and Paul says that what I am saying they are paying attention to.

Paul in Ephesians 6:10-13 gives us the armour of God. The fallen angels are the implacable enemies of the believers. The protection we have is the armour of God so that we can be protected from the fallen angels. In the angelic conflict the Christians must be prepared for warfare. In Ephesians 6:12 we have principalities, powers and wickedness in high places. The fact of organisation is given in the fact that there are archangels, the chief princes. These are also given in Daniel 10:13 where the prince of the king of Persia. There is therefore much evidence of structures of a military type in Satan's army.

We have angels of the seven judgments, angels of the seven churches, guardian angels, we are surrounded by the angelic conflict which we cannot see but we can be aware of incredible spiritual pressure. We should pray and study the Scriptures and put on the whole armour of God.

We do not know how many angels there are. From Matthew 18:10 there is an inference that the number of human beings as believers from the beginning to end of time is the same as the number of fallen angels. There are therefore many millions of fallen angels if that concept is correct.
Believers think that they can have victory without any prior organised spiritual discipline. Such training is absolutely vital. You are called to fight as a soldier in the Lord's army. Most Christians should be court-martialed because they are disobedient to their commanding officer and to the Holy Spirit as they are not walking with Him. In addition they are often not obedient to the under shepherd, the pastor of the church.

They are not feeding on the Word he is teaching. The enemy is organised, we must be organised. You cannot go it alone in this battle. If you do the odds against you are overwhelming. You must be in communication with your commanding officer all the time and you must stand shoulder to shoulder with Christians who are doing the same. Only then can the enemy be beaten in your area of the world.

The church therefore must be organised, spirit filled and evangelistic. Satan is in the business of splitting churches. He is not interested in hotels and beer houses so much as churches which he wishes to close down, split or immobilise them.

ROLE OF ANGELS

The elect angels praise Him, worship Him, rejoice in what He does, serve Him, appear before Him and are instruments of His judgement. Relationship to the ages or epochs of history, dispensations, the creation and the garden of Eden is also of interest.

When Abraham was visited by the three men two of them were angels. At the giving of the law and at the first advent of Christ the angels sang with the shepherds and were observing the Cross. During the first few years of the church they were also active with such events as the freeing of Peter from prison. They will be active again at the Second Advent. Between these events angels are still active but not as visible as they were in the first few years of the Church Age.

Michael is the special angel for Israel. There are many who are trying to influence the nations and their leaders. In Matthew chapter 4 with the Temptations Satan offered the Lord the kingdoms of the world and the glamour of them. He could do this because his demonic influence controlled the nations of the world. Most of the leaders in the ancient world were under the influence of demons, probably very little has changed nowadays.

If we examine politics today we have people making some very peculiar decisions because they are under some sort of influence. The principle of the fallen angels influencing unbelieving leaders and the elect fighting them gives the principle of the guardian angel. This shows that God check mates Satan everywhere he works and that His hand is on history. Even though Satan has the world generally in his pocket he is still constrained by God as to what he can do.

JUDGEMENT ACTION OF ANGELS

The judgement action of the angels, they announce judgement and execute them. Angels will separate the righteous from the unrighteous. It is also, of interest that the angels who are the protectors of the believers are also those who execute judgement on the unbelievers.

The Lord is either your Saviour of judge and the angels are either your protector or executor of judgement. We therefore have the relationship between the Lord and angels, the Lord and man and man and the angels.

ANGELS IN RELATION TO THE CHURCH

They help as ministering spirits, they have a communication function in Revelation. In Acts they aided in winning people to Christ, they observe us whilst in Ephesians 3:10 they encourage.

Sometimes it has been reported that in the real missionary area help for the believer is given by angels. Many missionaries have testimonies regarding angels. God chooses to employ the intermediate ministry of the angels from time to time. In Acts 12 the Lord released Peter from prison through an angel. When an angel is involved the Lord gets the glory, when the Lord is involved, the Lord gets the glory.

The angelic ministry is a very important part of our life on the earth but most of our lives we are unaware of angelic ministry. It is very important that we take angels seriously and study the subject. The believer must be filled with the spirit and put on the armour of God. The super creatures were here before the creation of man in the form of angels. They are a lot smarter than us and are very active for both bad and good. The evil angels can be manifest as angels of light in bodily form.

Because of the nonsense talked about angels in Pentecostal churches such as Oral Roberts telling his followers to paint crosses on the soles of their shoes to crush demons many conservative churches do not tackle this subject. Do not be put off by these foolish people this study of angels is biblical and necessary.
We can expect to see great increase in activity perhaps in the form of extra terrestrials. The demons in seances are saying that it will not be long before real contact is made. Keep remembering the Lord's words, that, Greater is He that is in you than He that is in the world. You have to have doctrine and have the armour of the Holy Spirit on.

**DOCTRINES**

**ANGELIC CONFLICT** - see page 4 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

---

**LESSON 32 - SATAN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**INTRODUCTION**

We have to recognise that Satan exists. Many people believe in UFO's and ET's but they do not believe in Satan. Many people are foolish in this area. Satan is a fallen angel and is the prince of the angels. He does not like being studied. In military tactics it is very important to know two things, firstly to understand your own weapons and how to use them and secondly to know your enemy, his strength and weakness. This is so that you may be able to fight him and defeat him. Thus the basis of military science is to beat the enemy.

**BELIEVERS SPIRITUAL WEAPONS**

We have spiritual weapons in the form of the whole armour of God which is described in Ephesians 6. We have to know Satan and his troops, the demons, who are his enemies. We must know our enemies as with the days getting darker the position gets more difficult.

We should distinguish carefully between the devil and demons. This distinction is quite overlooked in the KJV. The devil and the demons are two distinct groups.

The doctrine of Satan is a practical doctrine which helps us to understand our utter dependence on the Lord and it should drive us to prayer. Prayer is the only source of victory over evil in your life. In James 4:7 we are told to submit ourselves to the mighty hand of God, resist the Devil and he will flee from you.

If you know he is the enemy you can know his strengths and respect them, you can also know his weakness and exploit them. He is a coward in the face of a Bible believing, spirit filled Christian. The Christian must be Bible saturated. The Holy Spirit works through the Word, John 14:16-26 If we are going to face the enemy we do so knowing that he is a coward. We need not fear Satan if we are facing him in the knowledge of God's Word and controlled by the Holy Spirit.

The armour of God in Ephesians 6 is a defensive armour. The Christian does not have a spear, he has a sword. Even though the armour is defensive you are supposed to go on the offensive with it.

The Romans would take the attacks of the enemy, get down behind the shield. The Romans would take the attack and when the opponents came in to finish them off the Romans would lower their shields slightly and counterattack with the short sword.

We have the shield of faith and the sword of the Word. We must know God's Word and use it in the power of the Holy Spirit. You cannot have Bible study without the filling of the Holy Spirit and you cannot have the filling of the Holy Spirit without the knowledge of God's Word. Many Christians are used to being docile, however in this area you must go on the offensive.

**WHO IS SATAN?**

Satan is a person and created as a personality. He exercises all the functions of a person, he has a will, a personality, spiritual life, strategies and hatreds, plans. He has a plan for you. The strategies and plans of Satan are against the
There is no mention in the Scriptures about Satan attacking unbelievers because they are his already. He is a creature and therefore not equal with God. There are no equal good and bad influences as stated in the Chinese ying and yang. Satan is superior to us yet far inferior to God. As a creature he can only be in one place at one time. Too many believers believe Satan is more powerful than he truly is.

Although he has a plan for you and I God also has a plan for us and God's plan is infinitely stronger. We are on the winning side. Christians are not losers. That is the power of God's Word when you know it and it is coming through you. It is very unlikely that we will see Satan however we are going to come up against demons.

The Lord did not deny that Satan had power over the kingdoms of the world. He was wanting to sift Peter like wheat, he had power over Job in sickness but his power is limited by the Lord. God is in control. God does not get off His throne and share it with anyone let alone the ex archangel. He has access to heaven but is not in a position of authority. Our life is hid with Christ in God. We are as secure as God is on his throne.

When you are up against evil you must know where you stand and that you are secure. You need to know about eternal security, confession of sin and the like.

While Satan has power in his own right the power will not crush the believer in fellowship - I Corinthians 10:13. The Holy Spirit does not leave you and is permanently in you. You can face anything if you know where you stand. Greater is He that is in you than he that is in the world. I John 4:4

DEMONS

Demons implement Satan's policy at any one time but are not under very good control. The effect of the demons on Christians is evident from Ephesians 6 and I Timothy 4 where there is a difference of the power of demons over unsaved people and of those who are born again due to the fact that the Christian is indwelt by the Holy Spirit. While the demons may possess an unsaved person they may only oppress a saved person. There is therefore a difference in the duration of demonic power over those who are born again. Nowhere in Scripture is the believer indwelt by demons. Full Demon possession is only possible for the unbeliever as your body is the Temple of the Holy Spirit, but you may become paralyzed by your sin and therefore come under demonic influence in thought or actions.

DEALING WITH SATAN

If the Holy Spirit is in you God is light and in Him is there no darkness at all. You encourage your people to stand up to demonic attack and not throw your ink bottle at the Devil as Luther did. You pray as the power of the Holy Spirit deals with Satan. Do not wrestle with the Devil. Do not have any fellowship at all with any person who recommends that.

You deal with him by claiming God's Word through prayer and if he is physically in the room with you, you claim "Greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world" You tell him that if he is here it is because God has allowed him to be here.

He is a coward - James 4:17 because you turn to Revelation 20,21 and he sees that he is doomed and he does not like reading that. If we trust the statement that we can do all things through Christ who strengthens me we can live like Paul.

People are looking for instant spirituality. They are not prepared to live on God's Word. It must be real and must lead you to prayer. Satan is a created being, he has power but he is limited, he has character but it is flawed as is his personality. He has weakness which is pride which is a cluster sin including such sins as jealousy.

ORIGIN OF SATAN

Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 give good background to Satan. Ezekiel 28:11-19 explains a lot about Revelation 20 where Satan goes to the place called the Lake of Fire. Satan starts the fire of the Lake of Fire. Satan originally had unparalleled function, covering, perfection and power as he was in the throne room of God. He therefore fell from the highest point to the lowest.

In Ezekiel 28:13 we have the nine precious stones that make up Satan's covering.

These nine are also represented in the twelve stones on the breastplate of the High Priest. The three that are missing represent the two sons of Rachel, Joseph and Benjamin. Rachel represents Israel and thus God is seen protecting her children, the children of promise.

The origin of his sin is given in Isaiah 14:12-17 - this notes the five "I wills". Satan's sin was pride and arrogance. He thinks he is unbeatable and in his arrogant pride he hates believers who by their very actions show that a creature with free will, even though they are lower than the angels, are able to choose for God. They therefore show that he is wrong by accepting the Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour and receiving the righteousness of God in the process.
Your faith in the Lord Jesus Christ demonstrates the rebellion of Satan for what it was. He knows that you are not going to spend eternity with him and he therefore wants to make our lives as miserable as possible while we are on earth. As long as you are walking in the power of the Holy Spirit in the light of His Word you have nothing to fear from Satan. God is in control and can be trusted, the enemy is deceitful. His power was defeated at the Cross.

Satan is also called the angel of death but death was defeated at the Cross. God’s Word states that we can do anything in the power of the Lord and that we have nothing to fear from the enemy if we continue in fellowship with the Lord. However we have to be aware of the Satan, the prowling lion who is looking for the carnal believer to devour. He can only attack the weak believer as the strong believer will leave him for dead. As a pastor you must teach your people this. You are in a position of strength, you must know your position, maximise it and live as winners.

DOCTRINES

SATAN

1. SCRIPTURE Genesis 3; Isaiah 14; Ezekiel 28; Matthew 4; Revelation.
2. BIOGRAPHY Satan is the most beautiful creature ever to be created by God. He is an angel who rebelled against God before the creation of man (Isaiah 14:12-15). Originally he was the covering angel, the personal attendant of Jesus Christ in the very throne room of God. Unlike God, Satan is a created being and as such can only be in one place at any one time. He is attended by a vast number of angels (called demons) who have given him unswerving allegiance. After the creation of man, he tempted Adam and Eve to be as gods and to know good and evil by disobeying God. Satan then became the ruler of this world (Genesis 3:1-7). He attacked the human race in many ways prior to the birth of Jesus Christ. Throughout Jesus Christ’s life, Satan attacked the Lord. Since Christ’s victory at the cross he attacks believers. Satan still has access into heaven where he accuses the brethren. Halfway through the tribulation period Satan is thrown out of heaven (Revelation 12:7-9). This causes him to intensify his attack on the human race. During the millennium he is confined to the bottomless pit, allowing a perfect environment on the earth (Revelation 20:1-3). After a brief rebellion at the end of the millennium (Revelation 20:7-10), Satan is condemned to the eternal lake of fire which was created for the devil and his angels.

3. EVALUATION - Satan is called:
   a) The destroyer (Revelation 9:11).
   b) The accuser of the brethren (Revelation 12:10).
   c) The adversary (1 Peter 5:8).
   d) Beelzebub, prince of devils (Matthew 12:24).
   e) The deceiver of the whole world (Revelation 12:9).
   f) The great dragon (Revelation 12:9).
   g) An enemy (Matthew 13:28,29).
   h) The father of lies (John 8:44).
   i) The god of this world (2 Corinthians 4:4).
   j) A murderer (John 8:44).
   k) A blinder of minds (2 Corinthians 4:4).
   l) The prince of the power of the air (Ephesians 2:2).
   m) The ruler of this world (John 12:31: 14:30).
   n) The ancient serpent (Revelation 12:9).
   o) The tempter (Matthew 4:3; 1 Thessalonians 3:5).
   p) A blinder of minds (2 Corinthians 4:4).
   q) A roaring lion (1 Peter 5:8).
4. PRINCIPLES
   a) Believers are in Christ and therefore in a position of supremacy over Satan (Romans 8:37).
   b) Satan was defeated at the cross once and for all (Colossians 2:14,15).
   c) He can therefore only use devices and schemes, trying to convince the believer that he can still win the battle against God.
   d) Satan, through religion, tries to get man to work independently from God.
   e) A Christian out of fellowship can promote principles proposed by Satan (Matthew 4:8-10; Mark 8:33).
   f) Satan will use Scripture slightly changed, or added to, to try and confuse believers and lead them astray (Matthew 4:3-10; cf. Psalm 91:11,12).
   g) If Satan the adversary is resisted he will flee from you (James 4:7).
   h) Knowledge and application of the Scriptures is essential in understanding the wiles of the devil (Ephesians 6:11).

SATANIC ATTACK - see page 62 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

CHRISTIAN SOLDIER - see page of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

LESSON 33 - SATAN - HIS WORK AND DESTINY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 33 | Satan – his Work and Destiny [226] | Revelation 20:1-10  
Isaiah 14:12-17  
Matthew 4:1-11 | Religion  
The Cross and Satan  
Satan’s Destiny |

INTRODUCTION
Revelation 20 shows the fact that Satan's destiny is certain is a fact that believers should know and be aware of. When you know your enemy and that you are in a physical war you do not know who is going to win, yourself or the enemy but we do know in the angelic war that God will win. In Revelation 20:1-10 the Tribulation is over and the Lord has returned. Satan has been imprisoned and has no influence on the earth. Therefore the evil which came from him is not present during the Millennium. This is a very important passage for theology and prophecy.

The end of Satan is not that he is bound for a thousand years. It is after his release. At the Second Advent Satan is arrested and put under custody and placed in the bottomless pit. He is locked in Tartarus. He is released again to lead the last rebellion of mankind. He loses and finally is arrested and thrown into the Lake of Fire where the Antichrist and the False Prophet are. We can see from Revelation 20 that Satan is under God's control. He is then in the Lake of Fire forever. He is not of equal power to God. If you are in Christ Jesus you are on the winning side. Satan is on the losing side no matter how powerful he is. Knowing his destiny gives you the concepts of dealing with him in time.

FALSE CONCEPTS ABOUT SATAN
There are false concepts about Satan:-

[a] People do not believe that he exists. Some people think that his name is just a personification of evil. He however is a creature created by God.

[b] Others believe that Satan is the cause of all sin. Satan is the author of sin. He is the author of pride, arrogance and rebellion. He is more embarrassed about sin than most people are. Satan's push is not to get Christians and unbelievers to do nasty things. His big push is religion. He does not want people in the gutter. When they are they often realise their need of a Saviour. Satan's biggest push is religion, to encourage people in their self righteousness.

DIVINE GOOD - HUMAN GOOD
This policy of evil is Satan's major program and is running parallel to God's plan of divine good. Satan is a great counterfeiter and is an angel of light but he is evil and has a theology which he preaches as an alternative to that of God. Satan wants people to be the same as him, to be independent of God. He does not want them in gross sin because they come to a point in their life when they require help. He wants evil respectable people who do not want God in their lives.

Isaiah 14 shows the expressed purpose of Satan which is to overthrow God as shown in the five I wills. To this end he will use his huge power and will weaken the nations which made the earth to tremble. He made the earth as a wilderness and destroyed cities. He is absolutely overwhelmed with pride. He wants people to worship him and follow him instead of God. Satan is the founder of religion.

CHRISTIANITY AND RELIGION
Christianity is not a religion but a relationship with God through Christ. Religion is man trying to impress God by doing good things, saying good things and being respectable. More people are led to hell by religion than by anything else.

Satan would prefer to have people in churches who do not believe that the Bible is the Word of God, that do not believe you need to have faith in Christ to be saved. He would far sooner have people living in a liberal church thinking that they are far better than the fundamentalists. These people are following modern thinkers but they have pride.

People do not realise what total power Satan has in a religious organisation. The hardest opposition that we will have will come from religious people not the pubs. A lot of the people who wear dog collars are on Satan's team. You have to realise where the enemy is. This is shown by the fact that most of the prophets were resisted by the religious group of their days, the priests who were not doing their job, the false prophets that were organising the Lord's death.

Satan wants people to be like him, self centred and self sufficient. The liberal calls the Lord Jesus Christ, Jesus and say that they know more than He does, so did their father Satan. He though he knew more than God and still does. Where is he going - to the Lake of Fire. Where are we going, we are going to heaven. His troopers are going to join him. When you are being opposed by the religious crowd look at the Word of God and know where they are going. Do not deviate. Power the Word out and let the Holy Spirit loose, get people praying for you. The enemy will then slither away.

Every group from the Communists, the Socialists and the WCC which push the idea that you do not need a Saviour indicates the source of that thought. Satan has a strategy. Satan's religion is a humanly acceptable one, no salvation, no hell, no sin, no judgement. Analyse the theology that you come across. If they are not talking about sin, judgement, and say that any saviour will do and there is no hell then they are in the camp of the enemy.

Many pastors in the church are helping Satan in this policy, knowingly or unknowingly. His policy to the unbeliever is to blind the minds of them whilst to believers it is to confuse them. There are many false issues and sidetracks, the KJV only group is a side track as it gets the focus off Christ and gets them out of churches where God has blessed them and splits believers who would have otherwise walked together in the gospel.
Anything that does that is not from God but from the enemy. Satan promotes pride and legalism, idolatry. He is a counterfeit right the way through leading people on the wide way to destruction and for making things easy. God standard is to take his yoke upon us and learn of Him. Satan's people are generally popular whereas God's people are not. However we know our destiny.

OTHER SATANIC STRATEGIES

Satan has supplementary strategies. He is in power and politics. The temptation of the Lord is indicative of this. Satan's push was to avoid the cross and take the crown without the Cross. Satan said that he would make the Lord the ruler of the world. The temptation of the Lord was to accept the counterfeit and become religious rather than spiritual. He still wants Christian churches to be religious rather than spiritual, anything as long as they are not walking in the power of the Holy Spirit in holiness and truth. There will be great temptation not to teach the Word in the way that you do. They will say not to preach on sin because people are nervous. You cannot have one foot in both camps. God will discipline you if you are half and half. Teach the Word and burn the apostate out of the church. Get some prayer warriors and preach the word. God will replace those who have left or the Lord will lead you to a place where you are able to teach the Word. Do not compromise with the devil or his people.

The Charismatic movement are being used by the liberals, being used by Satan, Catholic, Anglican, Presbyterian and Uniting church ministers who do not believe God's Word love to have Charismatics in their church as they add life to what would otherwise be dead. They try and feed them false doctrine and kill them. If you stay in a place which has false doctrine for long enough you will go under. You must rescue the sheep from the false teachers and get them to a place where they can grow.

THE CROSS AND SATAN

The Cross deals with Satan's certain final defeat. The Cross is God's grace provision. Teach the Cross and let the spirit destroy the pride in man. Teach Bible doctrine systematically. This is the only thing that destroys Satan's lies. Cults go out on Sunday morning, they are looking for people who know a little bit about the Bible but not enough to tell it from the counterfeit. Every time you teach the Word you are inoculating them against evil. You need to teach at least four times a week, an adult Bible study before church, the morning and evening church service and the mid week meeting. All of it should be systematic teaching. Saturate God's people in God's Word.

Satan hates the cross, you teach the cross, he hates the truth, you teach the truth. Teach systematically and often. The sword of the Spirit which is the Word of God is your weapon against Satan. Let the Spirit loose through the Word and Satan will flee from you. If you find someone who loves the Lord teach them the Word. Help them on with their armour. You are going to build them up and they will stand with you. If your church grows you have a whole lot of people standing with you. The fruit of the Spirit is one thing that Satan cannot counterfeit and stand. What is their fruit? People may be able to do miracles, raise the dead and do other things that are amazing but may still be using the wrong power.

DOCTRINES

RELIGION

1. Satan's religion is a humanly acceptable one: no sin, no judgment, no Saviour and no Hell. Satan appears as an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 1:13-19,26)
2. Many pastors in the churches are servants of Satan's policy, knowingly or unknowingly. (Isaiah 30:12, Jeremiah 2:8, 2 Peter 2:1-10)
3. Satan's strategy towards unbelievers is to keep them blinded to the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3-4, Colossians 2:8, 2 Thessalonians 2:9-10)
4. Satan's strategy towards believers is:-
   a) to confuse by false teaching. (Matthew 7:15, Romans 16:18)
   b) to appeal to pride. (2 Corinthians 10:12)
   c) to promote idolatry. (Habakuk 2:18,19)
   d) to promote legalism. (1 Timothy 1:7-8)
5. Satan's policy calls for counterfeit faith:-
   a) counterfeit gospel. (2 Corinthians 11:3-4)
   b) counterfeit pastors. (2 Corinthians 11:13-15)
   c) counterfeit communion. (1 Corinthians 10:19-21)
   d) counterfeit doctrine. (2 Timothy 4:1)
   e) counterfeit righteousness. (Matthew 19:16-28)
   f) counterfeit way of life. (Matthew 23)
   g) counterfeit power. (2 Thessalonians 2:8-10)
   h) counterfeit gods. (2 Thessalonians 2:3-4)

THE CROSS AND SATAN - see page 22 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

SATAN'S DESTINY

1. Satan is called a "prince" indicating that he had his own power and followers. (John 12:31, 14:30, 16:11, Ephesians 2:2, 2 Corinthians 4:4) Yet he is still a creature, and is still ultimately subject to God (Job 1:12)
3. At the cross, Christ defeated Satan, as his main power was through sin and death. (John 12:27-32, Romans 5:12, 1 Corinthians 15:54-56, Colossians 2:14-15, Hebrews 2:14-15)

4. God purpose with the world is not yet complete - therefore the enforcement of Satan's defeat will not take place until the end of the Millennium (Hebrews 1:13, Revelation 20:10)

5. Satan's final judgment is sure:-
   a) When he fell he was condemned, this was before (Genesis 1:2).
   b) In the garden the certainty of God's judgment was announced. (Genesis 3:15)
   c) The Cross was his final defeat. (John 12:31, Colossians 2:14-15)
   d) In the midst of the Great Tribulation his access to heaven will be stopped. He will no longer be able to slander believers. (Revelation 12:7-12)
   e) At the Second Advent he is arrested and bound. (Revelation 20:1-3)
   f) After the Millennium he is briefly released to lead the last great rebellion against God, and is finally cast into the Lake of Fire. (Revelation 20:10)
   g) There are therefore four falls of Satan:-
      i) from his place in eternity past to the earth with access to heaven.
      ii) then that access is denied causing him to be restricted to the Earth.
      iii) he is then contained in Hades for a thousand years.
      iv) then his final fall into the Lake of Fire.

5. Satan has six abodes in his journey from the throne room of God to the Lake of Fire.
   a) The Throne of God  Ezekiel 28:12
   c) The Atmospheric Heavens  Ephesians 2:2, 6:12
   d) The Earth  Revelation 12:7-12
   e) The Abyss  Revelation 20:1-3
   f) The Lake of Fire  Revelation 20:7-10

LESSON 34 - SATAN - HIS STRATEGIES

INTRODUCTION

Paul says that we should not be ignorant of Satan's devices. What is the main push by Satan in his strategy as far as Christians are concerned? It is to try and make sure that they remain carnal. Satan can have nothing to do with Christians who are walking in the Spirit. If a person is walking in the Word of God and walking close with the Lord they are in a place of strength. However if the old sin nature is running their life it is the basis of weakness.

SPIRITUAL OR CARNAL?

At the cross we are entered into union with Christ and our lives are hid with Christ in God. We therefore have eternal security and we have spirituality in time. Unfortunately not many people deal with sin effectively and quickly so rather than affecting the eternal state of the believer the believer on earth spends most of their time in carnality with unconfessed sin in their life where they are useless in the angelic conflict. They cannot be used by the Lord but they can be abused by Satan. A person can change from an effective person to a useless Christian.

As you remain carnal you start losing your spiritual perception, things that you knew once you no longer know and you will finally accept false doctrine, false practice and you will be involved in Satan's policy. It can happen to great men of God. A carnal believer is a dead sitting duck for going astray.

Most of your major opponents in your ministry are not unbelievers, they are carnal believers who will oppose you and wear you down. Such a person will go off on a false trail of theology. All Satan can do is to bring them under maximum divine discipline and use them to destroy other Christians. He is robbing those believers of eternal rewards.

WORLDLINESS

Satan is a spoil sport taken to extremes. His policy in the Scriptures is called worldliness. When ever you have worldliness referred it refers to Satan's policy of evil which is opposed to God's policy of grace and spirit filled bible instructed believers living with his power. God has a policy for history, He has a policy for Christians. Satan has a policy that is going on in the universe, his plan is all that man can do as he ignores God.

The world for world is called kosmos in the Greek and kosmos thinking is all thinking in accord with Satan's plan and is rebellion to God and rejection of His plan. Satan's strategy is to side-track the believer into his policy which is worldliness. Carnality is living in accord with or in sin. When you get into this as a believer you think just like an
unbeliever.

Satan's world Kosmos occurs 185 times in the Greek New Testament. He comes in by the false teacher or false book and gives an alternative to God's viewpoint.

Definition - the kosmos world is a system organised by Satan and headed by him and leaves God out but is a rival to it. There are many systems that have plans and dreams of what they want done.

There are two types of belief system, firstly those who are dealing with God's plan and those who are running in opposition to God's plan. As a Christian we should be in harmony with the plan of God.

There is a big battle going on over you. Satan is not able to get your soul because you are already saved, but he can rob you of your happiness, your eternal rewards and even your sanity. There are hundreds of Christians who crack up and become ineffective in what they are supposed to do.

God wants you to think clearly and doctrinally in accordance with the Word of God and with an eternal life perspective. We should recognise our eternal destiny and the fact that we are to be with Him forever. We should see every person through the Cross. Satan wants you to lose your Biblical perspective. It is the Holy Spirit's power which carries you through in the Christian life.

POLLUTED BY THE WORLD

James 1:26-7 - Here we have the concept of undefiled, holy, unspotted. In normal dealings with people we need to be on guard. In the ancient world they did not have flushing toilets, the streets were the sewers with the heavy rain acting as the cleanser and it was quite common for the contents of chamber pots (small toilets) to be emptied from an upper window over people walking adjacent to the building. Their clothes therefore became spotted with uncleanness. The rich did not use to walk in the streets, they would ride chariots or horses due to the environment. This is why we are told to avoid being covered in Satan's filth; we are to avoid walking in places of spiritual danger.

This is also why people took their sandals off when entering the home and washed their feet. What is in focus here is the contents of the chamber pot which you did not see coming. By analogy if you are not looking where you walk you can become defiled and stink. You can be tainted by the world unless you walk carefully. However if you are alert you will be able to avoid defilement. As a believer in the devil's world you need to have your wits about you. If you surround yourself with evil and people who are thinking evil it will rub off on to you.

AMBASSADOR

If you are in the devil's world, which you are you are an Ambassador, you are a witness in an alien land. You are there to serve your king but you have to serve him in a way that you are not going to be contaminated. You guard yourself at the point of spirituality and carnality. It is absolutely necessary to feed on God's Word and deal with sin. You saturate yourself in God's Word so that the concepts of the Scriptures keep you from the concepts of evil that you are surrounded with.

As a pastor you should teach the Word four or five times a week so that your flock is prepared. If they do not concentrate on the Word of God they will suck up evil into the vacuum. If you watch television four or five hours a day you are looking at spiritual garbage. You will have people in the church soaking in the TV programs with their false doctrines and enticement to sinful lives and they are in real danger. These programmes are built on sin and often if a Christian is portrayed it is as a fool or hypocrite.

But do not despair as you see Satan so active for Satan's plan is going to finish. God has the only lasting and victorious plan and He is going to terminate Satan's policy. Worldliness will run its course but it will be over. We are on the winning team. Evil is not defeated yet but the final act is yet to occur.

It is written that Satan's policy is doomed. He knows it, he does not like it and that is why he wants to lead away the foolish believers.

NO COMPROMISE

In James 4:4 we see that the Christian must recognise that it is war and that he must not compromise with the enemy or the enemies' tools. We need to recognise policies which oppose God's Word and put it out of your life. Life is too short to spend it in front of television watching programmes based on anti Scriptural principles. We should advance in the Christian life. We should make our days count now. There is not a lot of time and every day counts. We need to recognise Satan's policy and avoid it. We need to recognise God's plan in relation to Satan and give thanks for it.

We are at war and we have to face that concept, the battle between the Christian and the kosmos. Enjoy the world but do not love it. We should respect what the Lord has created, we can enjoy certain things in the world but we should not commit ourselves to it because it is passing away. You car, house, possessions are passing away, we are passing away. Our love must be directed towards the things that last. Have a divine perspective.
**DAILY ORDERS OF THE BELIEVER**

The daily orders for the believer are as follows:

[a] 1 Peter 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant, your adversary the devil walks around as a roaring lion walks around seeing whom he can devour. James 1:26-27
[b] Ephesians 4:27 - Never give place to the Devil
[c] James 4:7 - Submit yourself to God, resist the Devil and he will flee from you.
[d] Ephesians 6:11 - put on the whole armour of God that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the Devil. Stay alert, resist, do not give into temptation or false systems of thinking.

**PRINCIPLES**

1. Christ defeated Satan on the Cross and with it the defeat of the author of sin.
2. Satan was strategically defeated but is still active.
3. Satan is now called the adversary of believers. He cannot destroy you but can undermine and destroy your witness if we allow him the chance.
4. When we are carnal we are re under the control of the Old Sin Nature and are therefore weak and are open to Satanic attack.
5. Testing of believers is not allowed to go beyond the dictates of the Lord - 1 Corinthians 10:13

If we do foolish worldly things then he will attack. He is not bound during the Church Age. Satan cannot indwell a believer or possess them but they can be beguiled, and so side tracked and made useless as a soldier in the Lord’s army. As a believer you have the Holy Spirit within you and greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world. If you have a person who is demon possessed you know that he is an unbeliever.

The solution to demon possession is the acceptance of the gospel. In this case you need to pray for protection and get people to pray that the Holy Spirit may convict the person involved. If the demon talks to you you should tell him to stop because of He that is in you is greater than he that is in the world. In some cases the only way acceptance of the gospel can be shown is by the people throwing themselves at your feet. We have not got the power to cast out demons that the Lord had.

If you remove the demon without conversion there you have gained nothing except opening the opportunity for many more demons to indwell that person. When the Holy Spirit enters the demon must go. It is the transforming of lives by the Holy Spirit that we want to see, that is the work of the gospel.

Satan is the most attractive being ever created and is seen as an angel of light and not the red skinned person with horns. We however with the Holy Spirit are in an invincible position if we stay close to the Lord. His most potent attack is to get false teachers and doctrine in the church which has caused many to fall. There are today sadly very few mainline churches believing the Word of God and teaching it. Satan is the founder of fear as well as sin. He will send people to oppose you, be prepared and stand in the strength and power and knowledge of the Lord.

**DOCTRINES**

**SATAN’S STRATEGY**

1. Believers are warned against him and his tactics. (Ephesians 4:27, 6:11-13, James 4:7, 1 Peter 5:8)
2. We must be ready and alert. (2 Corinthians 2:11)
3. Satan is a deceiver and a counterfeiter. He uses deception - not obviously wrong or sinful - but very subtle changes to the truth (Genesis 3:1). Remember, a counterfeit looks like the original.
4. Satan is described as an “angel of light” - often seeming attractive and “good”. (2 Corinthians 11:14)
5. His tactics
   a) Towards unbelievers.
      i) to blind them regarding the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3, 4, 2 Thessalonians 2:9, 10)
   b) Towards believers.
      i) Satan seeks to hinder our growth and witness. (1 Peter 5:8)
      ii) Satan will mislead into false doctrine and legalism. (1 Timothy 5:14-15)
      iii) He persuades believers to ignore the will of God through disobedience (Genesis 2:17, James 4:7-8)
      iv) Satan often attacks our assurance of salvation so that we doubt God.
      v) Worry (1 Peter 5, 7-9)
   vi) Fear of death. (Hebrews 2:14-15)
   vii) He accuses believers of sin both to God and to the believer (using guilt). (Revelation 12:9-10, Job 1:6-11)
   viii) He takes our focus off Christ by getting eyes on self (1 Corinthians 1:10-11), on people (1 Corinthians 1:12), on things (Hebrews 13:5-6)
   ix) When we don’t allow the Holy Spirit to control our lives, we open ourselves up to Satanic attack. (1 Corinthians 7:5, 2 Corinthians 2:11, 1 Timothy 5:14-15)
   x) The Lord will allow Satan to attack a believer as discipline for unconfessed sin. (1 Timothy 1:20 cf 2 Corinthians 12:7)
   xi) Satan cannot indwell or possess a believer, only beguile them. (Galatians 3:1)
   c) Towards the world in general.
i) The World - Satan tries to deceive the nations. (Revelation 20:7-10)

SATAN'S WORK

   a) Satan blinds mankind to the truth of the Word of God by means of religion. (v.7)
   b) He has the power to shorten life. (v 8a)
   c) He can remove persons from a place of authority (v 8b)
   d) Satan can kill (v 9)
   e) He can persecute children (v 10)
   f) He can remove wealth (v 11)
   g) Satan can turn people against each other (v. 12)
   h) He can cut off man's posteriority to the second generation (v. 13)
2. Satan as a killer
   a) He has the power of death (Hebrews 2:14, 15)
   b) Killed Job's children (Job I:12, 18,19)
   c) Motivated Cain to murder Abel (John 8:44, cf 1 John 3:12)
   d) Often administers the sin unto death (1 Corinthians 5:5)
3. Satan as a source of disease
   a) Was responsible for Paul's "thorn in the flesh" (2 Corinthians 12:7)
   b) Produced illness in Job (Job 2:6-8)
   d) Causes certain types of deafness, dumbness, paralysis and crippling effect by means of demon possession (Matthew 4:24, 12:22, Mark 9:17, 18)
   e) When demon possession causes the affliction, the removal of the demon or demons produces an instant cure (Matthew 10:1, Mark 1:32-34, 6:13, Acts 8:7, 19:12)
4. Satan as an instrument of discipline
   a) Desired to discipline Peter (Luke 22:31, 32)
   b) Was authorised to discipline the Corinthian adulterer (1 Corinthians 5:5)
   c) Was called upon by the Apostle Paul to administer extreme discipline to Hymenaeus and Alexander (1 Timothy 1:19,20)
   d) May become involved in the discipline of ministers and deacons (1 Timothy 3:6, 7)
   e) Attacks through a believer's lack of forgiveness and orientation to grace (2 Corinthians 2:10, 11)
5. Satan as a healer
   a) Healing was a temporary spiritual gift before the completion of the Canon of Scripture (Acts 19:11, 12, cf Philippians 2:27, 2 Timothy 4:20)
   b) God still heals today (Philippians 2:27)
   c) Since Satan possesses the power of disease he often counterfeits healing by the removal of demons (Matthew 12:24, 24:24, 2 Thessalonians 2:9, Revelation 16:14)
6. Characteristics of Demon Possession
   a) Loss of individuality: the demon-possessed person no longer has control of faculties of the soul (Mark 5:1-13, Luke 8:27, 9:39, 40)
   b) Abnormal behaviour:
      ii) Violence (Matthew 8:28)
      iv) Raving (Mark 5:5)
      v) Foaming at the mouth (Mark 9:20)
      vi) Nakedness (Luke 8:27)
   c) Loss of health:
      i) Dumbness (Mark 9:17, Luke 11:14)
      ii) Deafness and dumbness (Mark 9:25)
      iii) Blindness and dumbness (Matthew 12:22)
      iv) Epilepsy (Mark 1:26, 9:20, Luke 4:36)
      v) Mental illness (Mark 5:15)
   7. Demon possession explains:
      a) So called divine healing
      b) Alleged speaking in tongues
      c) Faked contact with the dead (1 Samuel 28)
      d) Success of self styled exorcists
      e) Rise of certain world leaders (2 Thessalonians 2.9, Revelation 16:13, 14)
      f) Cause of some wars (Revelation 20:8)
      g) Reincarnation
      h) Fortune telling (Acts 16:16)

LESSON 35 - DEMONOLOGY - SATAN'S TROOPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 35 | Demonology – Satan’s Troops [238] | 1 Corinthians 10:19-24  
2 Peter 2:4-5  
Galatians 6:2-4  
Luke 8:26-40  
Acts 19:111-20 | Demons |
INTRODUCTION

As active Christians we have to recognise that Satan does not like us being active. It is important to disagree with people if the Lord shows you that they are not right. In the 20th century we have seen the complete turn around in relation to demonism.

In the first part of the century most people believed in God but few took any notice of demons while now many do not believe in God but there is a resurgence of demonism. They will go and watch films portraying demonism but will not come to church. Satan is very busy forming an alternative to the church. This is typical of the climate in which we live today.

Today we are moving closer and closer to the situation that the early church encountered being surrounded by paganism, the occult and demonism. It is not that there are different philosophies, the real enemy is Satan and his army. As in the ancient world they were very involved with false religion so they are today.

Many people are looking for experiences and the enemy will offer them to them. We need to know what the wiles of Satan are so that you can warn your flock against them. Satan's attack is very subtle with him being portrayed as a serpent.

Satan see the believer who does not know what they should know and zeroes in on them. It is essential that we recognise that demons exist. You will find that this is mocked in some churches. Some will say Satan is a force of evil but the Bible says he is a creature. Stick to the bible!

THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

1 Corinthians 10:19-24 talks about religion in the ancient world, especially eating meat offered to idols. Paul talks about the laws in the Christian life, the law of liberty, the law of love, the law of supreme sacrifice. These laws interact so that you refrain from doing something even though through the law of liberty you could.

In the ancient world the vast majority of meat had been offered to an idol. This is not unlike the Moslem's offering sheep that they are slaughtering to Allah. All the abattoirs in the city of Corinth were dedicated to a god. That god was not Almighty God, it was the demon behind every idol. The gods of the nations are Satan's demons. They have power to deceive. Many believers felt they couldn't eat meat then or they would be compromising their faith; Paul says no you can eat the meat even if it is offered to the idols(or demons)

Paul says from the law of liberty he can eat a T bone steak, for the demon is a big nobody, but he is not going to do so because he does not want weaker or younger brothers in Christ to be confused in the relation of the believer and evil. He was going to follow the principle of grace and sacrifice. It is not a spiritual issue until you understand what it might do to another brother. He might come under the influence of those demons again. Once the new believers were secure in their faith however Paul would quite happily eat meat offered to idols as it is not an issue for him as he is in Christ and superior to them.

The principle is that Satan is involved in religion. Where there is a contrast between the truth and compromise the believer should pick the truth every time. The right path is always the one as far away from Satan's people as possible. Religion is evil and defiling because Satan is the author of it and Satan is the author of sin. This is where believers have to be discerning as to where you pull back from. The Christian must learn what and where to avoid. At a later point we will cover the principles of Love Liberty and Supreme Sacrifice as they are taught in this passage in Corinthians.

DEMONS

Satan's system is very powerful. Behind every false god there is a demon, behind pagan religions is Satan. With reference to the origin of demons there are many ideas.

Four possible origins are
[a] they are the spirits of wicked deceased people,
[b] they are the disembodied spirits of a pre Adamic race,
[c] They are the offspring of the union described in Genesis 6:1-6,
[d] they are fallen angels.

The only one that is biblically correct in that they are fallen angels. You will come across people with the wildest ideas but they have all occurred before. Satan has not had an original idea for the last two thousand years. Again and again you will see the devices and guises that he comes out with. In theology and Church history we have the devices and strategies of Satan.

Some fallen angels are confined, some are free. In 2 Peter 2:4 we have the record of the confined demons. They are fallen angels. The context of this is that some of the demons were confined at the time of Noah's flood.
Some theologians say that Genesis 6 shows sexual relations between angels and human women causing mighty men of renown (these are the great heroes of the myths of the ancient people). This seems the most logical for some of Satan's group to try and thwart the Lord's virgin birth by contaminating the gene pool of mankind by sexual habitation with the human race. In any case God thwarted their plan and judged these angels and locked them in a place called Tartarus, the pit. They are held in chains of darkness in the lower parts of hell.

Demons were involved with sexual immorality. Immorality is a sign of demonism even if it is behind a facade which is very respectable. Mediums are almost always respectable but can be wildly promiscuous or sexually deviant. All the religions of the ancient world had demonic activity producing gross and significant sexual deviance.

The final destination of all the fallen angels is the lake of fire. We are involved in the judgement of demons. There is evidence that church age believers will deal with demons and throw them into the lake of fire. Fallen angels have wills which they express negatively, they have personality and names and are individually identifiable. Physically they are more powerful than we are. However in Christ with the filling of the Spirit we are superior to them. It is your position in Christ which gives you the superiority. Greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world. (This text has been repeated often for a reason; it is our strength and a reminder of who we are, and our destiny.)

Many people are classified as schizophrenic. There is evidence that many are not psychologically sick but rather they have been dabbling in drugs and are demon possessed. It is necessary to be discerning here, for there is mental illness and physical illness, but sin and the impact of satanic teachings can play a big part in both.

In Luke 8:26-40 - here we see a demon possessed man. In verse 27-33 we have the picture of the Lord talking with this man and the demons within and they wished to go to another living being, in this case a herd of pigs. It is of interest that the swine did not want to be demon possessed and so ran into the lake. The swine were smarter than a lot of people, who for the power that Satan promises will accept a spirit guide (demon) into their body.

A Roman Legion was 6,000, there were six thousand demons in this man. Forget about demons taking up space. They are spiritual beings. The Gadarine demoniac comes running out and throws himself at the Lord's feet. He is not speaking, the demon is speaking through him. Demons can control a person's life but there is still the ability for the person to demonstrate their free will by means of bodily action as demonstrated by this man by him throwing himself at the feet of the Lord.

The demons knew who Jesus was and feared the Lord. They had personality and together they had given themselves a collective name. They had will and desired to go into the pigs. They wish to be embodied. If you see a witch or witch doctor who is nearing death you will be seeing a panic stricken person because the demons stir them up as they are wanting to indwell someone else. You find that when the demon goes the person dies quite quickly.

This is not psychology, this involves the will of the person. No one becomes demon possessed accidentally, you become in that state because you allow it to happen. Having received it the only way to get rid of it is by passing the demon to someone else or by being driven out by the Holy Spirit.

There is no hope without Christ for the demon possessed person. It is very common for the demons to control the voice box. You may find demon possessed people speaking normally and then their voice changes. A voice come out and talks about life in ancient Greece and will be absolutely accurate because it is the demon and he was there. They have observed mankind since Adam. This is what all the previous lives business of the mediums is all about.

People without Christ are easily fooled by the demons. Little children cannot be demon possessed as it requires an act of will, so a child of young age who is possessed has really broken barriers to get to that place, and the gospel is to be given. Jesus said that little children were the type of people who make up the kingdom of God.

Demon possession can only take place by a person opening themselves up to demons, or being in a place where there are demons and being foolish. Most demonism is associated with drugs.

The word witchcraft is "pharmaka" in the Greek. Drugs are as old as man. Nothing is new under the sun says the preacher. The explosion of occultism in the western world coincided with the explosion of drug taking in the 1970's. Many people do not know why they are involved with demonism. It is because they were involved with drugs.

In Acts 19 Paul was in Corinth. There was an insurrection. Here we have a Jewish exorcist. Most religions have exorcists. Satan plays with them and uses them from time to time. The Jewish exorcist tried to cast out demons in the name of Jesus.

The demon said Jesus and Paul I know but who are you and beat him up. Demon possessed people often have super human power. The demon possessed person jumped on them, ripped all their clothes off and they ran out of the house naked and wounded. This demonstrates that this area is one to confront only in the Lord's power, with the prayers of the whole church behind you, and with his word as your guide.

GOD DEALS WITH THE PROBLEM OF DEMONS
There are no magic formulae in Christianity. It is not a good luck charm to have a cross or a large Bible. The power that defeats demons is the power of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Word of God must be real in your life. The Sword of the Spirit is the Word of God. You need to have it in your mind. If you have the Word without the Spirit you are naked. The Holy Spirit works through God's Word.

The believer has to deal with sin in their life and keep short accounts. Do not walk one step unprotected in the Devil's world. Unless you are armed as per Ephesians 6 you are not dangerous you are in danger. The Spirit must be controlling you through the Word.

The Lord can use the demons for his purposes. If you come across demonism when filled with the Spirit you know you are safe. You have a number of promises and principles.

You have to recognise what the demons are up to. They promote idolatry and are behind all idol worship. They promote false religion, teach that you do not need a Saviour or that you can be your own Saviour. They teach works salvation rather than grace, the teach immorality rather than morality, they stir up the nations - Daniel 10:13.

Satan is involved with many wars. After World War 1 there was an increase in evil. In the 1920's it was almost as if an army of demons had been released from the trenches and were trying to stir up trouble. The influence of demons on politics cannot be overstated but we are on the winning side.

**DOCTRINES**

**DEMONS** - see page 23 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

**SECTION G – ANTHROPOLOGY – THE STUDY OF MAN**

**LESSON 36 - MAN HIS ORIGINS AND CREATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
John 1:1  
2 Peter 3:12 | Science and the Bible  
Science and Creation  
Creation |

**INTRODUCTION**

The first verses in the Bible Genesis 1: 1-3 are very profound. "In the beginning". The Hebrew scholars today marvel at this. It brings you face to face with eternity. In the beginning God created. No matter how far you go back in time God is there, in eternity past to meet you. This is saying more than God was there in the beginning, God created the beginning, God already was. Here we have the unity of God, the triune God, three persons with unity, one essence, one character creating the creation. Both the concept of the trinity and that of the creation are things far beyond our senses.

**CREATION**

"Bara" means to create something out of nothing, not to use anything physical. What you have in Genesis is Einstein's formula. This is what happened that energy created material, the power of God created matter. In the Hebrew it says that God created the heavens and the earth. What we have here is the mystery of mankind, creation and the smallness of us. The mystery of our own nature and our own being, the smallness of ourselves and the fact that our mind cannot comprehend it. There was a point before there was anything but God. You look at the stars and you think they go on forever but there is a limit to space. There is a limit to time itself. What is beyond it? This is where we are confronted like the Old Testament writer who asked, "What is man that you are mindful of him.

As a creature we must be aware that creation occurred and all that was created will go out of existence. God is beyond space and time. Our brains cannot handle a thought other than in terms of space and time. Heaven for instance is beyond space and time. It is a different realm, a different category. Paul caught a glimpse of this in 1 Corinthians 13 where he said that now we see in a glass darkly and then face to face.

When we pass through to this new dimension we will realise new knowledge and understand. We have to have new resurrection bodies because our existing bodies cannot handle it. We should start this study, as with all study of God and
his work)* with absolute humility. There are certain things that are discussed in theology which cannot be fully understood.

This is one of the fatal flaws in Calvin's work where as a young man of 26 he thought he could understand the Sovereignty of God. You will find that people who say that they can understand everything are arrogant, pig headed people. Beware in this area, as in others in theology, of all who claim to have a system that answers all questions; we are but dust, we often do not even know the right questions to ask.

With theology at the end of each session you should be able to give thanks for everything you have understood and leave with the Lord those things which you still do not understand but giving thanks for the plan as a whole. There will be certain things that you will not understand until you see Him face to face. We must be dependent on the Holy Spirit and rely on the Bible and the Bible alone. We need to walk out in the spirit of humility and then God can use us.

We have to recognise that we are limited and do not know the answer to every question. We need to recognise that no human being was there at creation. God has told us what happened but did so in a limited way. We have to be careful when we speculate beyond what the Bible tells us and stick with the revelation of God.

**EVOLUTION**

The basis of evolution is pride and not God. Man's philosophy is that man can understand all things. Genesis 1:1 says that you cannot understand all things, you are a creature in a creation. You are not like God. Satan's big lie is that man could be like God. This is what is behind all pagan philosophy and the theory of evolution. If you trust God it is not a leap in the dark by faith, without reason, for what God says makes sense.

What is your soul and spirit, what is your nature, who are you? As the Bible teaches you, you have to think about these things so that you can shortcut all the long arguments that the unbeliever will use to distract you and get to the Biblical solution.

The Bible is the most profound statement in any literature in any language. It begins with the right assessment as to where man is and God is and how the whole world came into being.

John 1:1 - En arche - in the beginning, in the status quo of the beginning God always "was". Go back as far as you can go with history and you find God coming out of history and pre-history to meet you. It is the Lord Jesus Christ who is coming out of history. We are faced with our limits as human beings are concerned. We are creatures of space and time. Coming out of eternity is the Creator who is Spirit not matter. - John 6:63

**WHO IS GOD?**

God is not an old fellow with a beard who lives in the sky. When we as human beings try and capture the concept of God and his plan in eternity for time we have to be careful. We cannot make God to be like us, we in Christ are made like Him. We talk about the essence or character of God. When you talk about His essence your words are not going to match the reality. The best we can do is to try not to confuse.

Many people make God far too small by anthropopathism and anthropomorphism. We talk about God as if He is a man, talking about Him as a human being. God is not angry as you are angry though the Bible talks about the anger of the Lord. It is not your type of anger. It talks about the love of God, but it is not your type of love. Only by the Word becoming flesh can we ever talk about God. All our talk about God must be rooted and grounded in the person and work of the Lord Jesus, for in him we see the best view of the character of God that we will have this side of eternity. What we must guard against is the so called category mistake. That is to speak of God, who is in a different category to man, as if he was man. This is all right as long as we recognize the anthropopathism, and are guarded with our language. We are limited by space and time. God is not limited that way. He is the creator of space and time.

The question will often come from a careless theologian whether sovereignty or election come first. Here this person has committed a category mistake as they have got God's decisions in the way that you make decisions in terms of space and time. God is the creator of before and after. When you get a resurrection body you are released from time but until then we must remember God does not think as we think. My thoughts are not your thoughts nor my ways your ways says the Lord. He entered our category in the form of Christ then he returned to His own category. Calvin and Arminius both failed in this area, in their discussions of election and free will.

About 90% of the evangelical Christians are confused on this difficult area of man and God and the difference in our viewpoints. Most do not study systematic theology and do not study anthropology and so do not know their own limits. If you are humble you recognise you hold the election and free will in balance and go on your way rejoicing.

The great tragedy is that Calvin burnt people at the stake and Zwingli drowned people who did not agree. They did not realise their limitations and therefore lost their humbleness and started to think they knew more than they could know. If you start with the wrong base your superstructure will be wrong even though you may say a lot of things that are right. We will learn a great deal both positive and negative from these men when we look at church history.
Evolution is another example which has as a basis that there is no God. David Attenborough for instance defies evolution, saying that evolution created us, thereby making a process a person/god. They do not explain how this occurred, when or why. People follow it because they do not want a personal God who may tell you what to do. He may call you a sinner in need of a Saviour.

Evolution starts from the basis that matter is all there is. The Bible starts from energy, the mighty God who created matter. Scientists speculate and do not know the origin nor how it is held together. They talk about chemical reaction but do not know what starts them in the human body so that we can function. What happens at death. How was it that language developed. How did thought develop from matter. What is life? Most of these people worship mother nature rather than Father God. The Satanic lie from the beginning was that man can replace God. What you know about God is what God has given you. The universe which looks so solid will one day go. Even as you look at it now it is composed of energy in dynamic movement

DOCTRINES

SCIENCE AND THE BIBLE

1. The fall of Satan and the resultant angelic conflict apparently led to the destruction of planet earth. (Genesis 1:2)
2. The earth was covered for a time by an ice pack. The ice pack was the result of freezing waters by darkness (the complete absence of heat).
3. With regard to the antiquity of the earth, neither science nor the Bible gives us a clear picture. We have some methods of measuring age, such as carbon dating and carbon 14, but these are not accurate in determining the antiquity of the earth. (Psalm 145:5)
4. There is never a conflict between what the Bible says in the original languages and the TRUE OBSERVATIONS of such sciences as cosmology, geology, astronomy, chemistry, anatomy, anthropology and psychology.
5. However, actual scientific data and information in the Bible is extremely limited. The Bible is NOT a scientific text book, nor was it designed to be one.
6. Being a Book of God's doctrines and filled with spiritual phenomena, it is obvious that the Bible will occasionally allude to or comment on what we classify as scientific subjects.
7. Wherever the Bible comments on scientific subjects, the Bible is always accurate in the original languages. God is the origin of all the laws and all the phenomena which science is based upon.
8. Therefore, science does not confirm the Bible but occasionally the Bible confirms scientific data or some scientific classification.
9. If scientific speculation does not line up with the Bible then such speculation is inaccurate. If there is a true conflict between scientific speculation and what the Bible says, the Bible is right. Just as when there is a conflict between some historical interpretation and what the Bible says, the Bible is right. In other words where the Bible comments on science, science must agree with the Bible, the Bible is not required to agree with science.
10. The continuation of the universe and the earth, including man, animal life, plant life, the stable state of the atmosphere with its various components all depends on the all powerful and unchangeable characteristics of Jesus Christ. (Colossians 1:17, Hebrews 1:3)
11. 'Scientific laws' is a misnomer. Scientific laws as such, do not exist because science did not develop these laws and science cannot enforce them. For example in chemistry God promises that when certain elements are combined, certain results will follow. This is a DIVINE LAW, not a scientific law.
12. So-called scientific laws are based on the assumption that the universe, which operates according to a fixed norm, will continue to do so. Science can observe and classify certain divine laws and then apply them productively, but only God in His sovereignty can guarantee the continuation of these laws.
13. The universe, with its function of matter and energy will not always exist as it does at the present time. (2 Peter 3:10-12, Revelation 20:11)
14. Known scientific laws and phenomena, which man has been able to observe, classify and apply depend entirely on the faithfulness of God. (Colossians 1:17)
15. The reason for preserving the universe is to resolve the perpetual conflict in human history, and to bring many sons into glory. (Hebrews 2:10)
16. The Word of God will survive the destruction of the universe for the Word of God and Bible doctrine will exist forever. (Psalm 119:89)
17. Regenerate man in resurrection body will live forever and survive the changes in the universe, even surviving the destruction of the present universe.
18. It is Jesus Christ who holds the universe together by the power of His Word. (Hebrews 1:3). At the same time He is holding back eternity in order for the human race to have the opportunity to believe in Jesus Christ.
19. Many scientific phenomena are elucidated in the Bible.
   a) The Movement of Planets (Job 38:31,32) In the 19th century M. Medler discovered that Aleyone the brightest star in the Plei des is the centre of gravity of the solar system. The Hebrew word for Pleides is KIMAH which means hinge, pivot or axle.
   b) Static Electricity (Jeremiah 10:13) This states that static electricity may be formed by the condensation of vapour.
   c) The Earth is Spherical (Isaiah 40:22, Proverbs 8:27) The words translated circle in Isaiah and compass in Proverbs should be translated spherical.
   d) The Earth rotates on its Axis ( Luke 17:24)
   e) Air has weight (Job 28:25) - "discovered" in 1630 by Galileo.
   f) Winds have circuits (evaporation and precipitation). (Ecclesiastes 1:6) "Discovered" in 1630 by Galileo.
   g) Radiation and Polarisation of Lights. (Psalm 65:8)
   h) Messages are sent by Lightning. (Job 38:35) - Who invented telegraphy? - God did.
   i) The Circulation of the Blood. (Ecclesiastes 12:6) - "discovered" by Englishman Dr. Harvey.
   j) Quarantine for Communicable Diseases (Leviticus 13:45-46) "discovered" in recent years by medical research.

SCIENCE AND CREATION
1. The following are brief comments which support the creationist view of life and confirm the Biblical statements on science. Science supports creation rather than the theory of evolution.
2. Genesis 1 and 2 tell the correct sequence of created matter and life.

3. Atmosphere
   a) Carbon 14. Scientists say that the production of Carbon 14 should reach equilibrium with Carbon 12 when the atmosphere is 40,000 years old. Modern calculations show that Carbon 14 is being produced at 3.1 greater rate than it is decaying. This indicates the atmosphere is less than 10,000 years old. Carbon dating is based on the speed of light which has been found not to be constant but gradually reducing in speed.
   b) Helium. Produced by the action of cosmic rays on the atmosphere the amount of helium present in the atmosphere indicates an approximate age of 10,000 years. No atmosphere 10,000 years ago - no life thus fossils and men are contemporaries.

4. Oceans
   Cosmic dust enters the atmosphere at 14.3 million tons per annum. If the earth was 4.5 billion years old the earth should have a dust blanket in excess of 100 feet in depth. This doesn’t allow for the greater rate of dust deposit which most scientists believe occurred in ancient times. The dust is not evident. This dust has been subject to rain translating the dust from the land via the new system to the oceans.
   a) Nickel. Assuming that the oceans were initially of absolutely pure water we would expect a certain amount of nickel deposits in the ocean as though somewhat rare on earth nickel is common in cosmic dust. There should be 950 pounds of nickel per square foot of ocean floor if the earth is 4.5 billion years old. The amount of nickel present in the ocean indicates an age of 9,000 years for the ocean.
   b) Uranium and Silicon. Similar readings with uranium and silicon give ocean ages of approximately 10,000 years only.

5. The Earth’s Crust
   a) Magnetic Field
      The magnetic field of the earth has a half life of 1,400 years. This means that 1,400 years ago the magnetic field was twice as strong, 2,800 years ago four times as strong, etc.
      By continuing this process back into history by 8000 BC it has been calculated that the magnetic field would be the same as a magnetic star precluding life on the planet. A magnetic star maintains its field by thermo-nuclear reaction.
      Projecting forward by 3100 AD the magnetic field decaying at its present rate will collapse causing the Van Allan belt to disintegrate allowing massive radiation of the earth which will end life on this planet. (This excludes divine intervention in the Millennium). The magnetic field is less than 10,000 years old.
   b) Earth’s Molten Core
      The famous scientist Lord Kelvin calculated the heat loss from the molten core of the earth through the earth’s crust and showed that the earth was far younger than its estimated 4500 million years. He also estimated the age of the sun as being young.

6. Biology
   a) Mules. Mules are formed by crossing horses and donkeys. Whilst male mules are always infertile, occasionally a female mule can produce offspring. By crossing a male horse with the mule a horse will always result. Similarly a male donkey will produce a donkey. Nature will revert back to its own kind.
   b) Cereals. Hybrid grains can be grown but are generally infertile. With the recrossing of wheat or oats with the hybrid wheat or oats are formed, never the hybrid.

7. Geology
   a) The Geological Column according to evolutionary theory ranges from Pleistocene in the Age of Mammals to Pre Cambrian of 570 million years or more. There are 15 subdivisions in this column. Nowhere in the world does the geological column exist in its correct order in nature.
   b) In the column Trilobites are in the Cambrian period of 500 to 570 million years. In recent years a fossil of a trilobite has been found with a human sandal print superimposed over it showing trilobites and man coexisted on the earth at the same time.
   c) In the Paluxy River, Texas, along the river bed are lines of dinosaur foot prints, foot prints of man and children together with giant foot prints 18” long. (Genesis 6:1-6). Giants in the land.
   d) In the Appalachian Mountains from Maine to Georgia are human foot prints in granite.

8. Astronomy
   a) Jupiter and Saturn both give out 21/2 times the heat received from the sun showing they are young bodies.
   b) io, one of the moons of Jupiter, not only has an atmosphere but has active volcanoes.
   c) Titan, the largest moon of Saturn also has an atmosphere. This indicated that the moon is less than 10,000 years old.
   d) The rings of Saturn are undulating not smooth. By the gravitational pull of Saturn it is estimated that the rings would have smoothed out completely between 10,000 and 100,000 years.
   e) Astronomers agree that comets have a life of no more than 10,000 years. Assuming that comets are not being created this shows a solar system of less than 10,000 years.
   f) When the first space ships landed on the moon NASA expected that there would be a 28 mile thick layer of dust of the consistency of icing sugar. NASA spent $1,000 million experimenting for a successful soft landing. When Neil Armstrong stepped on the moon he found the dust on the surface averaged 3” in thickness indicating some 8,000 years in age.
   g) Space probes were sent to Mars and Venus to try to find life. Both were unsuccessful.

9. Thermodynamics
   a) 1st Law - Energy is neither created nor destroyed. It changes from one state to another - this supports creation.
   b) 2nd Law - When changes take place, the structure always becomes less organized, never more complex. Creation confirms this.
   c) This very brief topic shows clearly how science supports the fact of creation rather than the theory of evolution with a likely date of original creation less than 10,000 years ago.

CREATION – see page 19 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]
LESSON 37 - MAN HIS ORIGINS AND CREATION [CONTINUED]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Man His Origins and Creation [continued] [250]</td>
<td>Genesis 1:26-28</td>
<td>Adam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE PLAN OF GOD

God created the world, He has a plan for it and a plan for man His creature. There is no meeting point between evolution and the Bible. The Bible is committed to a creationist view. The only point they have in common is the raw material in the form of rock and fossils which they both use. There is an intelligence behind the world and not just an impersonal force. God created, He has a plan, you are in the plan, you are part of it. It is this that stops the unbeliever from accepting the creationist view; a plan indicates a purpose, and a purpose must be responded to!

Jesus came to the cross and dealt with the cause of the separation between God and man. Paul uses this in his argument at Mars Hill in Acts 17. He started at creation, then the resurrection and then the gospel. Many ask the question “What does it all mean”? Many will run from it to sex, drugs, alcohol, money, power. This question is something which often exercises the minds of those at funerals. At many funerals people drink alcohol until they are so drunk that they do not have to think about where they are going.

The creator is a personal God not an impersonal force. Your creator became your redeemer.

The doctrine of man's creation is clearly taught in the Word of God. In Genesis 1 God is said to be a creator 17 times. Some teach creation directly, some imply it. It says that God made the world out of nothing. If God created then there is a purpose to it.

According to the testimony of Scripture man was created as the consummation of His creation. This means that there is a purpose to everything, to your life and to your death. God is not ticking over like a clock. There is nothing mechanical about the creation, it is personal and purposive.

There is a mind behind it. It is not random selection or chance, there is a purpose behind the plan and a conclusion to the matter as well. God is working His purposes out. My thoughts are not your thoughts nor my ways your ways says the Lord.

GOD BECAME MAN

John in his gospel moves from creation to the incarnation, God became man. God is involved in the world. He stepped into history, he is not a force such as in Star Wars. God intervenes in your life as a personal God. The unbeliever wants to reject God and not have Him in his life. You cannot get away from it or around it. If there is no creation there is no Cross.

If evolution is true then the Cross is a lie and God is not involved in the world. You cannot have Emmanuel and have God solve sins on the Cross, unless this is his universe God has been involved since the plan for creation was made, he was involved through prophets and miracles right the way through the Old Testament. He is involved in the incarnation, the Cross, the resurrection and ascension and in the giving of the Holy Spirit.

Evangelicals who accept evolution lack understanding, for by doing this, they provide an opening to the liberals to enter in. The logic is that if God was not involved in the beginning He is not involved in the end. If you find a Bible college that teaches theistic evolution you will find one that eventually rejects the virgin birth, the miracles of Christ, the efficacious death of Christ on the Cross and the second coming and the fundamentals of the Christian life.

In Genesis 1:26-28 - God says “Let us make man in our own image.

[a] Man's body is included in the image of God
[b] To be created in the image of God you have to be a living being.
[c] Man is able to make decisions so that he can have dominion over the animals of the world
[d] He was also to have fellowship with God. He is living, determinant, intelligent and moral.
This is another area where you must get it correct. This area is especially important in the free will and Calvinist approach. It is important to understand the implication of the fall. It shows that everything was soured by sin. We are not born an animal, we are still in the image of God but fallen. This is the true doctrine of what God calls the total depravity of man. This does not imply that you are just a depraved animal. If you say that there is nothing good in man you are blaspheming your creator as there is a lot of good things in man.

One of the early heresies of gnosticism where they said that your body was totally evil and depraved and that only the spirit you got from God was any good. This is not true, your body is wonderfully made. It speaks of the creator's hand at every part. There is nothing evil about your body, it was designed by God.

OLD SIN NATURE

You received your Old Sin Nature [O.S.N.], courtesy of your ancestor Adam. You can use your body for evil but there is nothing evil about your body. The total depravity of man is to show that it is totally impossible for you to save yourself. Your body is wonderfully made. The problem with man is sin.

Man when he was created had capacity for fellowship with God. When they ate of the fruit in the garden they lost the ability to have fellowship with God. This is why they hid in the garden. Everybody today are born spiritually dead but physically alive. It is impossible for us to have fellowship with God as we are born with a sinful nature. We have an Old Sin Nature which comes between us and God.

Before we were saved we were dead in trespasses and sins. This is why the convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit is so important. The Holy Spirit works on the unbeliever and works on the believer convicting them of sin and enables them to respond to it. However even when the Holy Spirit challenges a person they can still resist.

Conversion and salvation is getting back what Adam was given at first in the garden. The Second Adam came to win back what the first Adam had lost. If you remove the first three chapters of Genesis you have lost everything, for that is where the scene is set, the sin problem defined, and through the sacrifice provided, salvation is introduced.

HOW DO PEOPLE GET THEIR SOULS?

There are three main concepts, [a] the pre-existence of souls [b] the giving of the souls at birth, [c] that the foetus has a soul.

Type [a] is the belief of the Mormons and requires them to have large families so that the pool of souls is absorbed into "believers", rather than the available souls be born into unbelieving households.

Type [b] is proposed by Hodge which talks about the creation of a soul which is given to the child at birth. This allows for Christians to accept abortion.

Type [c] is proposed by Sledd and is called Traducianism, which states that the soul is transmitted at the time of conception when the genes come from the parents.

Type [a] has no biblical basis but there is no clear definition of which of type [b] or [c] is correct. Where there is no clear position we must be cautious, for good men differ, but there are consequences flowing from these views. For example, if [c] is correct abortion is murder.

The Bible differentiates between the body soul and spirit. You are not divided into three things but you are tri-unity a type of trinity. The body is what the soul moves around in, the soul is the part of you which responds to other members of the human race whilst the spirit relates to God and is only active in the believer. Hebrews 4:12

Man comprises two areas, material and immaterial. As believers we have a new nature, a sinful nature and a body and you are in the image of God.

The soul can mean the whole person, the immaterial part of a person, either in life or after death. It is nephesh in the Hebrew and psuche in the Greek.

The spirit is ruach in the Hebrew and pneuma in the Greek. This relates it to the air or spirit. It is something that does not belong to this world yet is. It does not relate to a whole person

It is of great importance that the difference between these features are understood and brought out consistently in your teaching.

Other synonyms given for the soul are the heart, the mind, the conscience, the will and flesh. This allows for the analysis of the structure of the soul. The Bible has a lot to teach on the subject of psychology. Paul uses the words heart and mind when dealing with the soul. Most ministers never touch this area
DOCTRINES

ADAM

1. SCRIPTURE - Genesis 2:19 - 5:5.

2. BIOGRAPHY

Adam ("red earth"), the first man, was created about 4000 BC, in the image of God. As the first man, he was created on the sixth day out of the earth from which he received his name. He was placed in the Garden of Eden where food was provided for him without heavy toil. He named all the animals. Finding no companionship in the animal kingdom God formed woman out of a rib of Adam. They lived for an indeterminate period in innocence in the garden where there was only one test of their free will - the tree of the knowledge of 'good and evil'. Eventually the woman, beguiled by the devil utilising the serpent, ate of the fruit of the tree. Adam, having to choose between God and the woman, chose the fallen woman causing sin to enter into mankind. Adam, the woman and the serpent were all judged with penalties being applied to them all.

   a) Satan indwells a beautiful serpent (3:1).
   b) He attempts to show that God is unfair (3:1).
   c) The woman is confused and misconstrues the command of God (3:2-3).
   d) Satan lies to the woman (3:4).
   e) Satan appeals to the woman’s pride (3:5).
   f) The woman sins, and having tempted Adam, he disobeys God. (3:6-7).
   g) Their nakedness immediately becomes apparent and they attempt to cover it with fig leaf clothes (3:7).
   h) They attempt to hide from God (3:8).
   i) God makes the first approach of seeking out fallen man (3:9-10).
   j) Man and woman each try to blame others for their sin (3:11-13).
   k) The serpent is judged (3:14).
   l) The first gospel message (3:15).
   m) The woman’s penalty (3:16).
   n) The man’s penalty (3:17-19).
   o) The man is told he will eventually die (3:19).
   p) God provides man with a coat of skins (3:21).

4. PRINCIPLES
   a) Satan can use many devices to deceive man (Genesis 3:1; Revelation 20:7-10)
   b) Knowledge of the Bible is essential to combat the wiles of the devil.
   c) Lies and pride are two of the greatest sins (Proverbs 6:16-19).
   d) Other believers who are out of fellowship can cause us to fall into sin (1 Corinthians 5:6).
   e) Human good (using our own works - fig leaves - to cover up sins) is not acceptable to God. The appearance of respectability does not necessarily reflect fellowship with God (Matthew 7:21-23).
   f) God always seeks out those who are lost (Luke 19:10).
   g) Sinful man will blame others or his environment for his condition rather than face his sin (1 Kings 18:17-18).
   h) God always provides grace before judgment (Romans 6:14).
   i) The gospel message is given. Salvation is for mankind, not for animals or Satan (Psalm 49:12; Revelation 20:10).
   j) The penalties on individuals are tailored for the individual. The woman who tried to rule over the man is herself ruled over (Proverbs 24:12).
   k) God provides a blood sacrifice to provide clothes of skin. Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sins (Hebrews 9:22).

LESSON 38 - MAN - HIS FALL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO</th>
<th>STUDY AND [TAPE]</th>
<th>TEXTS</th>
<th>TOPIC BOOK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

1 Corinthians 15 comments on Genesis 1. This is one of the most attacked passages in Scripture almost on a par with the resurrection passages. Genesis 1-3 is being attacked not only in the liberal camp but also in evangelical circles. Many do not consider Genesis 1-11 as history. Some dismiss both Genesis and Exodus as well.

IN THE BEGINNING

BOOK 1 – SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY 111
1. The first verse in the Bible is one of the most attacked portions of Scripture as many forms of false doctrine are refuted by this verse. There are 8 factors which directly rebuke humanistic philosophy.

2. Scripture Genesis 1: 1 "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

3. "In the beginning God" - shows the existence of God - this opposes atheism, the concept that no God exists.

4. "God created" - shows the eternal creator. The creator we know from other passages is Jesus Christ. (Colossians 1: 1 6). - this opposes polytheism, the concept of many gods.

5. "created the heavens and the earth " - describes the creation of matter which opposes evolution.

6. "God created" - describes the omnipotence or all powerful nature of God which opposes pantheism, the worship of many gods.

7. "God created" - describes the freedom of God and God's will which opposes fatalism.

8. This verse requires supernatural revelation which opposes naturalism which states that natural or physical laws are sufficient to explain the universe without divine revelation.

9. This verse appeals to faith which has no human merit and opposes rationalism and empiricism

10. This verse shows the utter helplessness of man which opposes human works or legalism

The liberals classify it as a myth which is a glimpse of the truth. We however view it as absolutely trustworthy as God the Holy Spirit, the author of Scripture, is totally trustworthy and accurate.

I Corinthians 15:21 - as in Adam all die so in Christ shall all be made alive. It should be noted here that Paul is referring to Adam as a real person and not a mythical character. He refers to it as an historical event in a similar way to the Cross being such an event. The God of the Bible is the Creator. He created Adam and Eve. He created male and female.

Did God Create Sin?

1. No. God is not the author of sin nor the author of temptation. James 1:13 It is incompatible with the nature of God for God to create sin which is an application of divine character of God. When man came from God he did not have a sin nature.

2. Man was a free moral agent, he had absolute free will in order to resolve the angelic conflict. The only sin that man could commit originally was negative volition.

3. So far as man is concerned, sin came from the outside of man. It originated with Satan who passed it onto man through the one thing they had in common - free will.

4. Just as Satan was a free moral agent, so man was a free moral agent created in innocence. He was neither holy nor sinful, he did not have eternal life nor temporal life.

5. There were two co-existent forces which started civilisation, God and the original man with his free will. They still exist, the sovereignty of God on one hand and the free will of man on the other.

The ideal situation is where the sovereignty of God and the free will of man meet - this is at the cross.

6. The sovereignty of God bestowed the free will on man to resolve the angelic conflict. Man can choose for himself even in contradiction to the will of God.

7. Such a choice which Adam made was contrary to God's will. The emphasis in Genesis 2 is to present from v4 to the end of the chapter the essence of man, the environment, the test of man and why God rested.

Genesis Chapter 3

The first six verses of this chapter deal with a debate about God's Word. This shows that before sin is able to occur the word of God needs to be stated. Without the Word of God there can be no sin as sin by definition is an rejection of God's Word.

God is going to judge every man and every woman. By implication every man and every woman will know some of the Word of God in order to be legitimately judged.
In Genesis it is clear that he wanted his creatures to obey Him voluntarily and not be an robot. What would man decide to do, what would he choose. The character of the moral man is under test. God allows him to choose.

Speaking to the animals was apparently not unusual in the Garden of Eden. Animals have nowadays the ability to communicate but they cannot speak. However this passage indicates that at some time the animals could speak.

It is noted here that the husband was the one in authority and instructed his wife on the fruit. This pattern goes right the way through Scripture.

When God judges, the man receives the greatest judgement because he has the major responsibility. The man is responsible for his wife. He, in this case, obviously did not do his job of teaching good enough.

We do not know how long Adam and Eve had been in the garden before the fall occurred. They may have been in there many years. It probably had been some time because of their need to name the plants and animals.

The form of the temptation was that they questioned God's Word. Satan's attack was to portray God as being unfair. The basic premise was that regulations rules and restrictions are wrong and isn't God awful for saying thou shalt not. This is a major push by liberals and the like. They do not want to be told by God what they ought to do.

God's motives were also criticised here. Satan says that God is worried about what you might discover if you disobey Him. That is a lie, Satan is the father of lies. Satan says that God is worried that you are going to learn as much as He does.

This passage undergirds all Bible teaching on sin. Sin is disobedience, it is rebellion against God's will. It is man saying to God that man knows best, that he does not need God. Eve rationalises the situation whereas Adam deliberately chooses. Adam had a choice, knowing God's will to obey God and pray for the woman rather than joining her. He should have refused to take the fruit. He however chose to be with her.

**STAGES IN THE FALL**

The attack of Satan is in ten increments

The first stage deals with the Word of God. Sin by definition is violation of the Word. The Word of God was given in verses 15-17 of Chapter 2. In the first eight verses six deal with an argument over a piece of Scripture.

You must have the Word of God declared and known so that you can be held responsible. What about those who apparently never heard. God is going to judge all men so they apparently have heard.

Every man and woman must hear sufficient of the Word of God so that they can be judged. Sin cannot operate in a revelational neutrality. Satan challenges the woman about what God has said. Satan's claim is an insinuation against the moral character of God. The temptation with sin is to become the absolute moral arbiter.

The second stage involves Eve having to decide if she is going to obey God's Word or not. Eve becomes her own absolute judge. If God's Word meets her specification she will accept it.

In verses 2 and 3 the third stage is that of deception. If someone asks you a question you have to ask yourself if this is a question that they should be asking. In this stage Satan says, Has God said this.

The implication is surely God has not said that and that there is surprise about God doing a thing like that. It is an insinuation against the moral character of God.

In addition the inference is that Eve has the final say as to what is right or not. Man therefore becomes the ultimate judge. You do what you want to do and obey God only when He does what you want Him to do.

The Biblical view is that whatever you do you must be in submission to God. When God's standards are not good enough we add our own standards to the Word of God.

Here Satan is speaking to both of them and speaking to the woman showing that he is bypassing the spiritual leadership of the man. In verse 3 the woman calls God by the name God rather than Lord God.

It is noted that Satan calls the Lord God by the name God alone. From Genesis 2:4 we have the name Lord God continually mentioned and yet here Eve mirrors the reduction from Lord God to God.

The word Lord means I am, I am your true Lord, with you in the fiery furnace, in the stresses of life. If you can get someone to use your vocabulary you have infiltrated their way of thinking. Here we have Eve using Satan's vocabulary.
Stage four involves the phrase 'Neither shall ye eat of it lest ye die'. Eve is concentrating on the negative attitude. Satan now says that she certainly shall not die. This is a direct denial of Genesis 2:16,17 which represents the only written Scripture at the time.

You will be as God. This is a proper noun and says that you will be as wise as God. Satan is implying that God does not have your best interest at heart.

Stage 5 is the acquisition of evil wisdom. This is always addressed to all aspects of our being.

From the point of view of the body it is good for food. It is pleasing to the soul being delightful to the eyes, it is tasteful, it is culturally pleasing. Desire to make you wise, it appeals to the spirit.

In Luke 4 we have the three temptations of Christ which are also split up into body - stones into bread, soul - the glamour of the world's kingdoms and spirit - doing something spectacular like testing the angels as you cast yourself off the Temple.

In James 3:15 in speaking of evil wisdom. This is earthly - body, sensual - soul, and Satanic - spirit.

In John 2:15 we have the lust of the flesh - body, lust of the eyes - soul, the pride of life - spirit. We should therefore be expected to be tested as a whole person.

Stage 6 is when the mental attitude sins become overt. Sins become overt only after mental attitude sins have been present for a long time.

In Stage 7 Eve gives the fruit to her husband who was with her. A study of the writing style of the author of Genesis has shown that he does not use extra words. Here however the man is said to be with her. From the text it is apparent that Adam was standing beside Eve and watched her talk to the serpent.

This is the gaining of social acceptance. To make it socially acceptable you try and get everyone else to do it. Homosexuals used to have to do it in secret. Now that they are able to practice this openly they are trying to make it socially acceptable. Evil loves to share itself.

Stage 8 - They learn that they are naked. This is shame rather than guilt. Shame is orientated before other people. It appears that at this time there may have been a change in metabolism. For the first time there is said to be the cool of the day. Their bodies felt different.

Stage 9 - They try and cover the problem by means of fig leaves. Cover up is the start of insanity. When one becomes aware of evil one has either to deny it and cover it up or deal with it by getting back to the Scriptures. Here one creates reality after their own perception.

Stage 10 - They heard the noise of the Lord walking ion the garden and they hid themselves. This is guilt which is as a result of God consciousness. Romans 5:12 - the cause of death is sin.

In Romans 7:5 we have the doctrine of the Old Sin nature. It is a fruit unto death which comprises human good and personal sins. This is a work of death and apart from the work of the Holy Spirit.

Evil has corrupted the genetic structure from which we are constructed. It is only by means of regeneration that we can be changed. This is done by the Creator who did the first creation.

Many people have made that choice over the centuries. To stand apart is a real test of the strength of character. What are you going to do when the person who is dearest to you is doing something which is opposite to God's will for us. We must be sensitive to what the Lord wants us to do and you pray for your partner or friend.

As an example we have Moses and the Exodus. Moses stuck with God's will even though it cost everything that many in the world hold dear. He lost the throne of Egypt, a woman who loved him, wealth beyond measure, and absolute power, yet he found his true destiny. So will we but only with the Lord's plan for our lives.

The results of the fall were three in number:-

[a] they lost their ability to have fellowship with God which is shown when they hid from the Lord.

[b] they lost the joy they had both in Christ and with one another, they lost the innocence and the wonderful peace of mind of a soul which had never known sin or rebellion. They lost it not only for themselves but for future generations

[c] From that time on mankind was born in sin It was transferred biologically and genetically. Every child is born physically alive but spiritually dead with an Old Sin Nature built into his genetic nature. Every one is born now in need of a Saviour.
The Lord asked them why they were hiding and what they had done. No one would accept responsibility for what had happened. God holds you personally responsible. In 1 John 1:9 it says "If we confess our sins", third class condition, we may or we may not confess our sins. This indicates responsibility.

THE JUDGMENTS OF GENESIS 3

Genesis 3 gives the judgments.

[a] Firstly Satan is told that he will be defeated by the seed of the woman. He was defeated at the temptation and defeated strategically at the Cross as we see in John 12.

[b] The woman would be in subjection to her own body, yet out of her pain will come joy and will also be under the rulership of the man. Also through the child bearing will come the Saviour, God will become man.

If she is in the right relationship with the Lord and her partner there will be great blessing and joy in that as well. She will have a deeper joy and fulfillment than the husband will know. There was also the great joy of knowing that the seed of the woman would in due course defeat Satan and solve the sin problem that she started all those years before.

It should be remembered that subjection of the woman begins with Ephesians 5:18 where both partners are subject to the Lord by being filled with the Spirit and thereby being mutually submissive.

The wife can then productively respond to the love of the husband. A woman who enters into a relationship with a man who she cannot respect in every possible way is a foolish woman. If you want to teach marriage in its true perspective you need to anchor the whole thing in the first three chapters of Genesis. If you remove them as myth you have nothing to anchor the rest of the Bible on. The liberals are on shaky foundations because they have thrown their anchor in the first chapters of Genesis away. True Christianity revolves on the historicity of the Scriptures.

[c] The man would have to work for his food and the ground would be less productive. Due to sin man would eventually die. He and his wife are driven out of the garden.

IMPUTATION AND THE FALL.

There are three imputations, the sin of Adam, the righteousness of God and the sin of man. Imputation is where it is as if you have done it and have the responsibility for it. The sin of man was given or imputed to Christ and he paid the price for it. He did not earn or deserve the sin. We did not earn or deserve the sin of Adam but we got it. Those who believe in Him will have the righteousness of Christ imputed to them which is not deserved either.

In the case of Adam and Eve they received the coats of skins which represented the sacrifice of an innocent victim. At the east end of Eden there were Cherubim with flaming swords who protected the way into the garden. It was here that they sacrificed. Adam and Eve were therefore covered by the blood shed for them which is a picture of the Cross.

You cannot have a mythical figure imputing anything. God has done something in history and that is seen to be real. It is also significant in the case of the sacrifice for Adam and Eve it was the Lord Jesus Christ who killed the animal. He in due course is going to go to the Cross and shed His blood.

Although man contends that they are not responsible for Adam's sin the Divine revelation stands that because of the far reaching effect of the representation of Adam as the head of the human race, Adam's original sin is immediately and directly imputed to each member of the human race with the unvarying sentence of death resting upon them.

Likewise by the fall of Adam the effect of one initial sin is transmitted in the sinful nature immediately by inheritance from father to son in all generations. The imputation of sin is universal as is the offer of salvation.

If Adam did not exist you could not say that Jesus died for the sins of the whole world. The Bible says we need a Saviour because of what happened back there. He was put under the curse so that you could be put under blessing in grace. Calvinistic seminaries are the ones that tend towards liberalism first.

The Bible indicates that the OSN is inherited from the father not the mother.

DOCTRINES

HUMAN CONDITION: NATURAL, CARNAL, SPIRITUAL – see page 41 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]

SPIRITUALITY – SEE LESSON 26 above

OLD SIN NATURE – see page 52 of Bible Topic Book [Condensed Version]